

Министерство образования Российской Федерации  
Южно-Уральский государственный университет  
Кафедра английского языка

Ш143.21-9  
С30

Л.А.СЕМАШКО

## TOEFL GRAMMAR REVIEW

Учебное пособие  
по английскому языку

Челябинск  
Издательство ЮУрГУ  
2001

ББК Ш143.21-923

TOEFL GRAMMAR REVIEW/ Семашко Л.А. Учебное пособие по английскому языку. – Челябинск: Изд-во ЮУрГУ, 2001. – 203 с.

Учебное пособие предназначено для тех, кто хочет причести в систему и усовершенствовать знание грамматики английского языка до уровня, необходимого для сдачи экзамена TOEFL (тест по английскому языку как иностранному), а также для широкого круга желающих самостоятельно продолжить изучение английского языка.

Пособие состоит из 5 частей, содержащих более 250 упражнений и тестов, направленных на закрепление наиболее важных разделов грамматики. Приложение с ключами позволит использовать пособие, как на аудиторных занятиях, так и для **самостоятельной** работы.

Список лит. – 13 назв.

Одобрено учебно-методической комиссией факультета лингвистики.

Рецензенты: М.Г. Федотова, О.И. Шубина.

## C O N T E N T S

Preface	5
PART I: British and American English	
1. Differences Between British English and American English	6
PART II: Grammar Review	
2. Sentence Pattern	11
3. Nouns	12
4. Count and Non-Count Nouns	13
5. Articles	16
6. Distinction Between OTHER / ANOTHER	22
7. Tenses	23
8. Subject— Verb Agreement	31
9. Pronouns	35
10. Verbs as Compliments	40
11. Pronouns as Compliments	42
12. The Verb NEED	42
13. Questions:	
Information Questions	43
Embedded Questions	45
Tag Questions	47
14. Negation	50
15. Affirmative and Negative Agreement	51
16. Conditional Sentences	52
17. USED TO / USED TO + Ving	60
18. Would Rather	63
19. Modals	64
20. Adjectives and Adverbs	66
21. Linking Verbs	69
22. Comparisons	70
23. Nouns Functioning as Adverbs	74
24. Hyphenated Adjectives	75
25. ENOUGH with Adjectives, Adverbs and Nouns	77
26. Cause Connectors: BECAUSE / BECAUSE OF; SO / SUCH	78
27. Passive Voice	82
28. Causative Verbs	84
29. Relative Clauses	87
30. Subjunctive	90
31. Inclusives: NOT ONLY...BUT ALSO, BOTH...AND, AS WELL AS	92
32. KNOW/KNOW HOW	93
33. Clauses of Concession: DESPITE / IN SPITE OF / ALTHOUGH	94
34. Problem Verbs	96

PART III: Style in Written English	
35. Sequence of Tenses	97
36. SAY/TELL	100
37. Antecedents of Pronouns	101
38. The Pronouns ONE and YOU	103
39. Illogical Participial Modifiers (Dangling Participles)	104
40. Participles as Adjectives	106
41. Redundancy	107
42. Wordiness	108
43. Parallel Structure	109
44. Transformation of Direct and Indirect Objects	112
45. Inversion	112
PART IV: Prepositions, Conjunctions and Problem Vocabulary	
46. Prepositions	114
47. Conjunctions	118
48. Vocabulary	121
49. Structure and Written Expression	
Test 1	134
Test 2	136
PART V: Idioms	139
Answer Keys	162

## Preface

At present many people want to study or to work abroad, or to work for a foreign company in Russia. The first step to achieve this goal is to pass the test which certifies your knowledge of English. For example, if your plans are connected with working or studying in the USA, you have to pass the TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language).

The TOEFL is a timed test that consists of four sections:

1. Listening Comprehension (50 questions — 40 minutes);
2. Structure and Written Expression (40 questions — 25 minutes);
3. Vocabulary and Reading Comprehension (50 questions — 55 minutes).
4. Writing (30 minutes).

The maximum total score is 300 points.

In preparing for the TOEFL, or any other language examinations, it is very important to review the language skills for each section of the examination and to have an opportunity to make model tests that are similar to the actual examination. Reviewing will help students recall some of the language skills that they have studied in previous classes and other books.

It is assumed that students have studied grammar prior to reviewing for the TOEFL, and that they are relatively fluent. The purpose of this workbook then, is to provide students with a detailed review of the language skills for the Structure and Written Expression section of the TOEFL, to sharpen these skills and to improve accuracy.

TOEFL Grammar Review is divided into five parts covering the most frequently tested problems necessary to pass Section 2 of the TOEFL. Part I shows differences between American and British English. Parts II-IV include practice exercises designed to improve the ability to recognize grammar and correct style in Written English. Two TOEFL Structure and Written Expression Practice Tests included in Part IV will allow to measure their ability to answer grammar questions in the TOEFL format. Part V contains exercises testing American idioms.

The TOEFL Grammar Review includes answer keys which enable to use this workbook as a self-study guide for independent out-of class work.

## PART I: BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH

### **1. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN BRITISH ENGLISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH**

#### 1. PRONUNCIATION

Letter	BE	AE	Examples
<b>a</b>	[a:] [e]	[æ] [ei]	ask, dance, half, grass, example, can't ate
<b>o</b>	[o]	[a]	hot, not, top, stop, problem
<b>i</b>	[ai]	[i]	privacy, either, neither, vitamin
<b>u</b>	[ju:]	[u:]	due, news, knew, tune
<b>r</b>	–	[r]	reader, figure
<b>t</b>	[t]	[d] NOTE: Before n [t]	little, city, cottage, auto, pretty, utter, critic, party, water, forget it  button, mountain, written
<b>t</b>	[t]	[tʃ]	situation
<b>s</b>	[s]	[ʃ]	issue
<b>s</b>	[z]	[ ]	as you know, because
<b>sch</b>	[sk]	[ʃ]	schedule
<b>d</b>	[d]	[d]	education, would you, could you
<b>e</b>	[ε]	[i:]	leisure
<b>- ure</b>	[ ]	[ ]	figure

#### 2. SPELLING

BE

- our      colour  
              favour  
              humour  
              vapour

- re        centre  
             theatre  
             metre

- ll        traveller  
             jewellery

AE

- or        color  
              favor  
              humor  
              vapor

- re        center  
             theater  
             meter

- l        traveler  
             jewelry

	marvellous cancelled		marvelous canceled
- ence	defence offence licence	- ense	defense offense license
- ogue	catalogue dialogue monologue	- og	catalog dialog monolog
- pp	worshipped kidnapper	- p	worshipped kidnaper
- mme	programme telegramme engramme	- m	program telegram engram
- ise	recognise	- ize	recognize
NOTE:	BE aluminium axe cheque gaol goodbye grey judgement kerb plough pyjamas through tyre copies leaves		AE aluminum ax check Jail goodby gray judgment cerb plow pajamas thru tire copys leafs

### 3. STRESS

BE	AE	BE	AE
ad'vertisement	advertisement	'necessary	'nece,ssary
ex'cess	'excess	re'search	're,search
in'quiry	'inquiry	'secretary	'secretary
la'boratory	'labora'tory	tele'vision	'tele`vision

### 4. VOCABULARY

BE	AE	BE	AE
accumulator	battery	pavement	sidewalk
autumn	fall	petrol	gas, gasoline
barrister	attorney	pictures	movie
biscuit	cake, cookie	post	mail
block of flats	apartment house	puncture	blow- out
chemist's	drugstore	queue	line
chips	French fries	return	round trip
cinema	movie theater	ring up	call up
cooker	oven	rubber	eraser
curtains	drapes	rubbish	garbage
flat	apartment	shop	store
garden	yard	spirits	liquor
grain	corn (cereals)	surname	last name
handbag	purse	sweets	candy
holiday	vacation	tap	faucet
hostel	dormitory	telegramme	wire
ill	sick	timetable	schedule
label	tag	toilet	bathroom, restroom
letterbox	mailbox	torch	flashlight
lift	elevator	trousers	pants, slacks
lorry	track	underground	subway
luggage	baggage	undershirt	vest
mark	grade	wardrobe	closet
million	billion		

### 5. GRAMMAR

BE	AE
1. <u>Present Perfect</u>	<u>Past Simple</u>
I have just had lunch.	I <u>just</u> had lunch.

I have already posted the letter.  
I haven't told them.

I already mailed the letter.  
I didn't tell them about it yet.

2. Future Perfect (Progressive)

What will you have done by the time you go to bed tonight?  
How long will you have been doing that?

Future Simple

What will you do by the time you go to bed tonight?  
How long will you do that?

3. I've got  
I haven't got  
Have you got?

I have  
I don't have  
Do you have?

4. Questions

Do you know anything?  
Have you ever been to London?  
Do you need a job?

You know something?  
Ever been in London?  
Need a job?

5. hospital  
in a team  
at the week-end/at week-ends  
different to  
write to someone

the hospital  
on a team  
on the week-end/on week-ends  
different than  
write someone

6. Irregular Verbs

burn-burn-burnt  
learn-learnt-learnt  
get-got-got  
prove-proved-proved

burn- burned-burned  
learn-learned-learned  
get-got-gotten  
prove-proved-proven

7. Should

I demand that I should be released.

Subjunctive

I demand that I be released.

6. COLLOQUIALISMS

BE

AE

Yes

Yep, Yup, Yeah

No

Nope, Naw, Hah

You

Ya

have to

hafta

don't you

don'tcha

going to

gonna

BE

AE

want to

wanna

have got (have)

gotta

let me

lemme

out of

outta

give me

gimmie

I don't know

I dunno

**Exercise 1.** Match the words in American English on the left with their British equivalents on the right.

**AE**

1. apartment
2. candy
3. cookies
4. drapes
5. elevator
6. eraser
7. faucet
8. flashlight
9. French fries
10. garbage
11. purse
12. vest

**BE**

1. lift
2. chips
3. handbag
4. undershirt
5. rubber
6. rubbish
7. sweets
8. biscuits
9. tap
10. flat
11. torch
12. curtains

**Exercise 2.** Match the words in American English on the left with their British equivalents on the right.

**AE**

1. baggage
2. blow-out
3. gasoline
4. round trip
5. line
6. sidewalk
7. subway
8. tag
9. truck
10. vacation
11. wire
12. yard

**BE**

1. holiday
2. telegramme
3. garden
4. pavement
5. luggage
6. label
7. petrol
8. underground
9. queue
10. puncture
11. lorry
12. return

## PART II: GRAMMAR REVIEW

### **2. SENTENCE PATTERN**

**Exercise 3.** Identify the subject, verb, compliment, and modifier in each of the following sentences.

1. Our neighbor's dog barked all afternoon.
2. Our walking group meets at seven o'clock in the morning.
3. The band played all evening.
4. June speaks at almost every staff meeting.
5. Mrs. Perez bought a new rug for her dining room.
6. Some cough medicines contain alcohol.
7. Bill carried his tools in a five- gallon plastic bucket.
8. Linda often buys snacks at the university store.
9. All of the buses are equipped with safety belts.
10. Paulette wore the same brand of blue jeans for twenty years.
11. Several inches of water flooded the basement of the library during the night.
12. Martin orders all his clothes from catalogues.
13. A typical supermarket sells more than 18,000 products.
14. One flea can lay 500 eggs.
15. A dangerous situation exists in the Near East.
16. Elliot first met Olivia in the snack section of a supermarket.
17. Mr. Pandolfo wrote his own will.
18. My new English class meets three times a week.
19. Ellain wanted to get a new hat at the store.

**Exercise 4.** Identify the part of speech of each word in the following sentences:  
noun, verb, adjective, adverb, article,  
conjunction, preposition, pronoun

1. The tiny island is surrounded by a spectacular body of water.
2. My pen is running out of ink.
3. I always wanted to go to that show.
4. Did you enjoy the party the other night?
5. My computer program is faulty.
6. The costumes in the pageant are almost as beautiful as the contestants.
7. The Paseo Del Rio runs along the San Antonio River in the heart of the city.
8. A beautiful photograph is a wonderful souvenir of an event.
9. You don't need to read all the information to get the question right.
10. My sister was thrilled to be invited.
11. In addition to being weatherproof, the new camera features a remote control.

12. The largest film festival in the world, the Houston International Film Festival, boasts 3,500 entries.
13. The main attraction of the new restaurant is the salad bar.
14. After deciding to go out and play, Gwen located her jacket.
15. The arboretum in our town has some beautiful pine trees.
16. Unlike those in the neighboring school, our teachers are quite flexible.
17. The bus was so late that we missed school.
18. The county fair is a lot of fun.
19. Leslie hid the dirty dishes in a cabinet before her mother came into the kitchen.
20. Pay's recipe for baked beans is famous in our neighborhood.

### **3. NOUNS**

#### **Irregular Plurals**

##### 1) Words with Two Acceptable Plural Forms

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plurals</b>	
antenna	antennae	antennas
apparatus	apparatus	apparatuses
appendix	appendices	appendixes
beau	beaux	beaus
cactus	cacti	cactuses
cargo	cargoes	cargos
criterion	criteria	criteria
curriculum	curricula	curriculum
formula	formulae	formulas
fungus	fungi	funguses
index	indices	indexes
medium	media	mediums
memorandum	memoranda	memorandums
radius	radii	radiuses
sanatorium	sanatoriums	sanatoria
scarf	scarfs	scarves
tornado	tornadoes	tornados
vertebra	vertebrae	vertebras
volcano	volcanoes	volcanos
wharf	wharfs	wharves
zero	zeroes	zeros

## 2) Common Irregular Plurals

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
addendum	addenda	mosquito	mosquitoes
alga	algae	nucleus	nuclei
alumna	alumnae	oasis	oases
alumnus	alumni	ox	oxen
analysis	analyses	parenthesis	parentheses
axis	axes	phenomenon	phenomena
basis	bases	potato	potatoes
bacterium	bacteria	psychosis	psychoses
child	children	quiz	quizzes
crisis	crises	self	selves
datum	data	series	series
deer	deer	sheep	sheep
diagnosis	diagnoses	species	species
elf	elves	stimulus	stimuli
foot	feet	terminus	termines
goose	geese	thief	thieves
hero	heroes	thesis	theses
hypothesis	hypotheses	tomato	tomatoes
leaf	leaves	tooth	teeth
live	lives	wife	wives
loaf	loaves	wolf	wolves
louse	lice	woman	women
mouse	mice	yourself	yourselves

## 4. COUNT AND NON- COUNT NOUNS

**Exercise 5.** Identify the types of nouns underlined in the sentences below Count (C)  
- Non - Count (N).

1. Ethan can operate his camera with only one hand.
2. Whipped butter contains fewer calories per serving than ordinary butter.
3. Randy installed a dashboard fan that runs on the power from his car's cigarette lighter.
4. His childhood was ordinary, if a little lonely.
5. The jacket is long enough to wear as a dress.
6. Fish and chicken are good for people with high cholesterol.
7. I didn't have much luggage - just two small bags.

8. Some people who have every pillow fluffed and in its proper place in their rooms never make an effort to organize their closets.
9. For her class Juanita created a gigantic collage that included old shoes, silverware, and clippings from newspapers.
10. Interesting baskets can be made of straw, bark or roots.
11. Osteoporosis is the abnormal loss of bone.
12. Vera's salsa was delicious and contained very few calories.
13. Customers are not in the mood to accept major changes in styles of clothing.
14. Shorter campaigns make voters more interested in politics.
15. After a long, lonely winter, the ugly duckling emerged as a beautiful swan.
16. Clutter can make a room seem smaller.

**Exercise 6.** Give the plurals of these nouns.

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. sand      | 5. accountancy  |
| 2. decision  | 6. electricity  |
| 3. furniture | 7. architecture |
| 4. age       | 8. soap         |

**Exercise 7.** Underline the correct determiner.

1. There are (less / fewer) chairs in this room than in the other room.
2. The assistant didn't give (much / many) information.
3. After the negotiations, they made (little / few) changes in their proposal.
4. (A large amount of/A great number of) mosquitoes appeared after the rain.
5. Light beer has (less / fewer) calories than regular beer.
6. They have (a /- ) good food in that restaurant.
7. (The amount of/ The number of) students taking TOEFL is increasing.
8. The case had to be reconsidered with (these / this) new evidence.
9. I like (fewer / less) mashed potatoes.
10. She ate (fewer / less) French-fries than usual.
11. He wants to make as (much / many) money as possible.
12. Anne invited a huge (amount / number) of people to the party.
13. Annette will drink an endless (amount / number) of milk if you let her.

**Exercise 8.** Select the correct form in the parentheses in the following sentences.

1. Sue was very helpful. She gave me some good (advice / advices).
2. We had (a very good weather / very good weather) when we were on holiday.
3. Sorry, I'm late. I had (trouble / troubles) with the car this morning.
4. I want something to read. I'm going to buy (a / some) paper.
5. I want to write some letters. I need (a / some) writing paper.
6. It's very difficult to find (work /a jo(B) at the moment.
7. Bad news (don't / doesn't) make people happy.

8. The flat is empty. We haven't got any (furniture / furnitures) yet.
9. When the fire alarm rang, there was (a complete chaos / complete chaos).
10. I had to buy (a / some) bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.
11. We were very unfortunate. We had (bad luck / a bad luck).
12. Bad news (don't / doesn't) make people happy.
13. Nobody was hurt in the accident but (the damage / damages) to the car (was / were) quite bad.
14. Mumps (is / are) a very common disease which usually affects children.

**Exercise 9.** Underline the word or words that correctly complete each sentence below.

1. (Many / Much) industrial products can be made from soybeans.
2. Desert plants compete fiercely for the (few / little) available water.
3. The American designer Louis Comfort Tiffany took (many / much) of his inspiration from nature.
4. A (few / little) simple precautions can prevent accidents at home and on the job.
5. In a formal debate, the same (number / amount) of persons speak for each team, and both teams are granted an equal (number / amount) of time in which to make their arguments.
6. Bats do (few / little) damage to people, livestock, or crops.
7. Even small (numbers / amounts) of zinc can have a significant effect on the growth of plants.
8. The adrenal glands, one on top of each kidney, secrete (many / much) important hormones.
9. Walter Hunt invented an enormous (number / amount) of devices, including the safety pin and a machine for making nails.
10. Folk artists have (few / little) or no formal art training.
11. (Many / Much) of the population in the rural areas is composed of manual labourers.

**Exercise 10.** Identify the incorrect noun form.

1. She was extremely fond of cat, especially Siamese and Burmese ones.
2. When making those cookies, you should use two cups of butters.
3. Electricities is expensive these days.
4. The populations of that town is very diverse.
5. She was concerned about delivery of her furnitures.
6. The interviewer was not impressed with Maria's honesties on her application.
7. The American court system is known for its concept of blind justices.
8. The recipe calls for one part of flour to two part of sugar.
9. The city museum houses examples of works by artist of many different schools of painting.
10. Drinking two glasses of milks every day will satisfy your need for calcium.

**Exercise 11.** Most of these sentences have a mistake in them. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).

1. I believe it's very difficult to find a cheap accommodation in London.
2. We're looking for a place to rent.
3. We're late because they're re-surfacing the motorway and the traffics are terrible.
4. He was asked to leave the college because of a bad behavior at the end of the term party.
5. I'm going to call my brother to wish him good luck for his driving test.
6. I think it's a pity Rebecca had her hairs cut short because she looked much more attractive before.
7. It's not a bad room, but the furnitures take up too much space.
8. As an old friend, may I give you an advice?
9. If we don't have up-to-date information, how can we make sensible decisions?
10. Fortunately, the check-up was less unpleasant experience than I had expected.
11. The happiness means different things to different people.
12. Bread are expensive in the grocery store on the corner.
13. Dr. Brydley will receive special honor at the graduation.
14. My neighbor dislikes a noise.
15. George had good luck when he first came to State University.
16. There was a very interesting news on the radio this morning about the earthquake in Italy.

## **5. ARTICLES**

**Exercise 12.** Fill in the blanks with a or an.

- |                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. ___ one-eyed monster    | 5. ___ only child    |
| 2. ___ university graduate | 6. ___ house cell    |
| 3. ___ used car            | 7. ___ eager student |
| 4. ___ hurricane           | 8. ___ usual mistake |

**Exercise 13.** Choose the article that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Beyond the ranch is (a, an) desert that gets only six or seven inches of rain each year.
2. If you're stumped for (a, an) answer in today's crossword puzzle, call 1-800-500-CLUE.
3. A head-on collision between two cars is much less likely to occur than (a, an) off-center collision.
4. Colonel Lurie wore a blue striped shirt and (a, an) yellow polkadotted tie.

5. By sitting next to (a, an) exit on public transportation, you make it easier for a thief to escape with your belongings.
6. (A, An) kitchen decorated in American Country style is often crowded with baskets, primitive furniture, and other collectibles.
7. Walter stores his extra cash in (a, an) empty cereal box.
8. Sheila always wears (a, an) uniform to work.
9. Each year (a, an) cowbird can lay as many as forty eggs in other bird's nests.
10. It is (a, an) honor to be chosen to attend the convention.

**Exercise 14.** Fill in the blanks with **a, an, the**, or leave the blank.

1. Al is making fifteen dollars \_\_\_ hour at Chambers' Turkey Products.
2. Jill makes it \_\_\_ habit to buy clothes on sale.
3. To tell \_\_\_ truth, a bank savings account may not be the best place for your money.
4. Helen showed \_\_\_ initiative when she decided to start a business of her own.
5. Losing as little as \_\_\_ quart of blood can result in shock and unconsciousness.
6. Over \_\_\_ last 20 years, more than 3 million people have attended the Country Dinner Playhouse.
7. Major changes have taken place in \_\_\_ financial services industry.
8. Dr. Richards predicts \_\_\_ extinction of the whooping crane.
9. Most people believe that \_\_\_ liberty is very precious.
10. Taking a hot bath is \_\_\_ good way to relax.
11. Lower programming costs raised the net income reported by \_\_\_ major television networks this week.

**Exercise 15.** Supply the article **the** if it is necessary.

- |                   |                          |                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. — Andes        | 13.— Antarctic Continent | 25.— Antiles         |
| 2. — Arctic Ocean | 14.— Asia                | 26.— Bahamas         |
| 3. — Baikal       | 15.— Belgium             | 27.— Bay of Bengal   |
| 4. — Caucasus     | 16.— Central America     | 28.— Corsica         |
| 5. — Crimea       | 17.— Dublin              | 29.— English Channel |
| 6. — Everest      | 18.— Gibraltar           | 30.— Great Bear Lake |
| 7. — Hague        | 19.— Havana              | 31.— Hawaiian Isles  |
| 8. — Hudson Bay   | 20.— Kalahari Desert     | 32.— Ladoga          |
| 9. — Lenin Peak   | 21.— Maldives            | 33.— New Zealand     |
| 10.— Netherlands  | 22.— North Pole          | 34.— Pacific Ocean   |
| 11.— Panama Canal | 23.— Persian Gulf        | 35.— Philippines     |
| 12.— Sahara       | 24.— Sakhalin            | 36.— Urals           |

**Exercise 16.** Supply the article **the** if it is necessary.

- |                        |                          |                             |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. — Thanksgiving      | 9. — Cooper's Art School | 17. — University of Florida |
| 2. — President Kennedy | 10. — Hyde Park          | 18. — Crimean War           |

- |                        |                            |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 3. — Christmas         | 11. — Waterloo Bridge      | 19. — Queen Elizabeth      |
| 4. — President         | 12. — Cambridge University | 20. — Tower of London      |
| 5. — Trafalgar Square  | 13. — Piccadilly Circus    | 21. — Eiffel Tower         |
| 6. — Vatican           | 14. — Buckingham Palace    | 22. — Westminster Abbey    |
| 7. — London University | 15. — Kremlin              | 23. — St. Paul's Cathedral |
| 8. — White House       | 16. — British Museum       | 24. — Houses of Parliament |

**Exercise 17.** Supply the articles **a, the** if they are necessary.

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. all of — sudden        | 16. at — sunset            |
| 2. to play — violin       | 17. in — loud voice        |
| 3. as — result            | 18. to watch — TV          |
| 4. in — conclusion        | 19. at — first sight       |
| 5. in — demand            | 20. to listen to — radio   |
| 6. at — time              | 21. — day before yesterday |
| 7. to tell — truth        | 22. to be in — bed         |
| 8. to be in — hurry       | 23. after — lunch          |
| 9. to be at — loss        | 24. for — example          |
| 10. from — time to — time | 25. two times — day        |
| 11. once — week           | 26. to tell — time         |
| 12. by — mistake          | 27. in — fact              |
| 13. from — head to — foot | 28. by — bicycle           |
| 14. — other day           | 29. to have — good time    |
| 15. as — matter of fact   | 30. to take — seat         |

**Exercise 18.** Choose the correct variant.

1. It is washed by the waters of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) an Atlantic Ocean  
 (B) Atlantic Ocean  
 (C) the Atlantic Ocean
2. The Queen of Great Britain is not \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) the absolute  
 (B) absolute  
 (C) an absolute
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is the main modern art museum.  
 (A) Tate Gallery  
 (B) A Tate Gallery  
 (C) The Tate Gallery

4. \_\_\_ drive on the left-hand side in their country.

- (A) the British
- (B) British
- (C) A British

5. They are \_\_\_.

- (A) a nice people
- (B) the nice people
- (C) nice people

6. The acting was poor, but we enjoyed \_\_\_.

- (A) music
- (B) a music
- (C) the music

7. She simply loves \_\_\_ and dancing.

- (A) music
- (B) a music
- (C) the music

**Exercise 19.** Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the**, or leave blank.

1. \_\_\_ Alaska is the largest state in \_\_\_ United States.
2. She was driving at a speed of ninety miles \_\_\_ hour.
3. Abraham Lincoln was President of \_\_\_ United States during \_\_\_ Civil War.
4. \_\_\_ corn is the most important of all American crops.
5. \_\_\_ water in this glass is not good.
6. Jane and I had \_\_\_ lunch at \_\_\_ school cafeteria.
7. \_\_\_ Rocky Mountains stretch all the way from \_\_\_ Mexico to \_\_\_ Arctic.
8. Richard wants to study \_\_\_ Computer Engineering at \_\_\_ Ohio State University.

**Exercise 20.** Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **some**, or leave blank.

1. Have you got \_\_\_ camera?
2. Would you like to be \_\_\_ actor?
3. Bill's got \_\_\_ big feet.
4. Do you collect \_\_\_ stamps?
5. Tom always gives Ann \_\_\_ flowers on her birthday.
6. Those are \_\_\_ really nice trousers. Where did you get them?
7. What \_\_\_ beautiful garden?
8. What \_\_\_ lovely children.
9. \_\_\_ birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
10. Jack has got \_\_\_ very long legs, so he's \_\_\_ fast runner.
11. You need \_\_\_ visa to visit \_\_\_ foreign countries, but not all of them.

12. I'm going shopping. I want to buy \_\_\_ new clothes.
13. Jane is \_\_\_ teacher. Her parents were \_\_\_ teachers too.
14. When we reached the city centre, \_\_\_ shops were still open but most of them were already closed.
15. Do you enjoy going to \_\_\_ concert?
16. When I was \_\_\_ child, I used to be very shy.

**Exercise 21.** Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the**.

1. Would you like \_\_\_ apple?
2. Could you close \_\_\_ door, please?
3. We live in \_\_\_ small flat near \_\_\_ centre of the city.
4. Have you finished with \_\_\_ book I lent you last week?
5. We went out for \_\_\_ meal last night. \_\_\_ restaurant we went to was excellent.
6. Did \_\_\_ police find \_\_\_ person who stole your bicycle?
7. This is a nice house. Has it got \_\_\_ garden?
8. It was warm and sunny, so we decided to sit in \_\_\_ garden.
9. This morning I had \_\_\_ boiled egg and \_\_\_ toast for breakfast.
10. \_\_\_ President of United States is elected every four years.
11. As I was walking along the street, I saw \_\_\_ 10\$ note on \_\_\_ pavement.
12. I went into the shop and asked to speak to \_\_\_ manager.
13. Have you got \_\_\_ car? — No, I've never had \_\_\_ car in my life.
14. There's no need to buy any milk. \_\_\_ milkman brings it every morning.

**Exercise 22.** Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the**, or leave blank.

1. I wrote my name at \_\_\_ top of the page.
2. \_\_\_ moon goes around \_\_\_ earth every 27 hours.
3. The Soviet Union was \_\_\_ first country to send a man into space.
4. Did you see the film on \_\_\_ television or at \_\_\_ cinema?
5. After \_\_\_ lunch, we went for a walk by \_\_\_ sea.
6. I'm not very hungry. I had \_\_\_ big breakfast.
7. John was \_\_\_ only person I talked to at the party.
8. Tim lives in \_\_\_ small village in \_\_\_ country.
9. Peru is \_\_\_ country in South America. \_\_\_ capital is Lima.
10. I never listen to \_\_\_ radio. In fact I haven't got \_\_\_ radio.
11. It was \_\_\_ beautiful day. \_\_\_ sun shone brightly in \_\_\_ sky.
12. I've invited Tom to \_\_\_ dinner next Wednesday.
13. What is \_\_\_ highest mountain in \_\_\_ world?
14. We don't go to \_\_\_ theatre very much these days. In fact, in \_\_\_ town where we live there isn't \_\_\_ theatre.
15. It was a long voyage. We were at \_\_\_ sea for four weeks.
16. I prefer swimming in \_\_\_ sea to swimming in pools.
17. Can you turn \_\_\_ television down, please? It's a bit loud.

**Exercise 23.** Choose the correct form in the parentheses.

1. (Apples / The apples) are good for you.
2. Look at (apples / the apples) on that tree! They're very large.
3. (Women / The women) are often better teachers than (men / the men).
4. In Britain (coffee / the coffee) is more expensive than (tea / the tea).
5. We had a very nice meal in that restaurant. (Cheese / The cheese) was especially good.
6. (Most people / The most people) still believe that (marriage / the marriage) and (family life / the family life) are the basis of our society.
7. They got married but (marriage / the marriage) wasn't successful.
8. I know someone who wrote a book about (life / the life) of Gandhi.
9. (Life / The life) would be very difficult without (electricity / the electricity).
10. (Skiing / The skiing) is my favourite sport but I also like (swimming / the swimming).
11. (Second World War / The Second World War) ended in 1945.
12. Do you know (people / the people) who lived next door?
13. Are you interested in (art / the art) of (architecture / the architecture)?
14. (All books / All the books) on the top shelf belong to me.
15. Don't stay in that hotel. (Beds / The beds) are very uncomfortable.
16. Two of the biggest problems facing our society are (crime / the crime) and (unemployment / the unemployment).
17. I hate (violence / the violence).

**Exercise 24.** Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Last year we visited Canada and United States.
2. Africa is much larger than Europe.
3. South of England is warmer than north.
4. We went to Spain for our holidays swam in Mediterranean.
5. Tom visited most countries in Western Europe.
6. A friend of mine used to work as a reporter in Middle East.
7. Next year we are going skiing in Swiss Alps.
8. Malta has been a republic since 1974.
9. The Nile is longest river in Africa.
10. United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
11. When an university formulates new regulations, it must relay its decisions to the students and faculty.
12. Jim was upset last night because he had to do too many homeworks.
13. There are some scissors in the desk drawer in the bedroom if you need them.
14. The Board of Realtors doesn't have any informations about the increase in rent for this area.

15. When Keith visited Alaska, he lived in a igloo, in the winter months as well as in the spring.
16. Is the Everest the highest mountain in the world?
17. This school has quite a large campus.
18. The news that you brought was great shock.
19. Is Malta in the Mediterranean?
20. The good books have good examples.

**Exercise 25.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. John's friends had a farewell party for him last Friday.
2. He tried hard to get good grade on the test.
3. It is always difficult to make the decisions.
4. When he lived in Paris he went to parties every weekend.
5. They gave me a electric typewriter for my birthday.
6. Paul began to think that he would never find the happiness.
7. The old man no longer believed that money was the most important thing in life.
8. He wanted to try on pair of jogging shoes at the store.
9. In all his life he had never wanted to try the wine.
10. She does not have an understanding of the subject yet.
11. I just saw boys from Africa that I met at the International House party last week.
12. Teachers usually spend many hours correcting papers.
13. Some people believe that frankness is the best policy in any situation.
14. The man who fixed my air-conditioning unit accidentally broke the fan.
15. The doctors have to go to school for many years to complete their education.

## **6. DISTINCTION BETWEEN *OTHER/ANOTHER***

**Exercise 26.** Underline the word or words that correctly complete each sentence below.

1. Lightning is a rush of electrical current from a cloud or from one cloud to (another / other).
2. A ballet dancer's techniques and skills are very different from those of (another / other) dancers.
3. No (another / other) state produces as much corn as does Iowa.
4. The legal surrender of a criminal suspect from one state or country to (another / other) is called extradition.
5. Rocky Mountain spotted fever is one type of disease that is carried by ticks, and Colorado tick fever is (another / other).

6. The art of photography has often been influenced by — and has influenced — (another / other) fine arts.
7. William O. Douglas was a Supreme Court justice for 36 years, longer than any (another / other) justice in the history of the Court.
8. In physics, diffusion is the spread of one substance's molecules or atoms through those of (another / other).
9. A basketball player may advance the ball by dribbling it or by passing it to (another / other) player.
10. Limpkins are water birds that eat snails and (another / other) mollusks.
11. Of the two new teachers, one is experienced and (another / the other) is not.
12. Because the first pair of pants did not fit properly, he asked for (another / other) pair.
13. Some bacteria are extremely harmful, but (other / others) are regularly used in producing cheese, crackers, and many (another / other) foods.

## **7. TENSES**

**Exercise 27.** Choose either the *simple present* or the *present progressive* form for the verbs in parentheses.

1. Most of the people in Korea (play) a sport.
2. He (understand) everything the teachers says.
3. When the party (end), we'll all go home by bus.
4. His sister (go) to work by train every day.
5. The boss (need) more time to work on project right now.
6. Her father (wear) his winter coat today.
7. That old sweater (look) new.
8. I'll wait for you until the movie (begin).
9. Most students (make) career plans before they graduate.
10. The students in my class this semester (make) a lot of progress in learning English.

**Exercise 28.** Choose the correct form of the verb from parentheses.

1. This food (is smelling / smells) delicious.
2. He (is going / goes) to the gym every week.
3. Right now Tony (is washing / washes) his car.
4. Laurie always (goes / is going) to work at seven.
5. He usually (phones / is phoning) in the evening.

6. We (go / are going) to the movies at six tonight.
7. It may sound strange but I (believe / am believing) his story.
8. I (remember / am remembering) my first day at school.

**Exercise 29.** Choose the correct form of the verb from parentheses.

1. At three o'clock in the morning Mary (was reading / read).
2. I (was calling / called) Linda at ten last night.
3. While I (watched / was watching) TV, I heard a strange noise.
4. When Bob (arrived / was arriving) everyone was eating.
5. While I was studying, my roommate (listened / was listening) to the radio.
6. Jerry (bought / was buying) a new car last month.
7. When I heard the knock on the door, I (opened / was opening) it.
8. He (went / was going) to the library when he suddenly met her pass by.

**Exercise 30.** Most of the sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. The coffee is smelling wonderful.
2. Last year we visited the States.
3. The ship sank because the engineer wasn't calling for help until it was already sinking.
4. The reason I get fat is that I'm always tasting things while I'm cooking.
5. How is Jennifer? Does her health improve?
6. You're quite right. I'm completely agreeing with you.
7. What did you after you left school?
8. Now I understand what you're trying to say!
9. I can't imagine why you were believing all those rumors.
10. Martin looked forward to a peaceful weekend, when his brother arrived with all his friends from the football club.
11. Philippa heard the result of the election as she was driving to work, so she called me when she got there.
12. Oh, I'm sorry, I've spilt some tea. Where are you keeping the paper towels?

**Exercise 31.** Select either *the past simple* or *the past perfect* form for the verbs in parentheses.

1. She (feel) sick after she (eat) a whole box of chocolates.
2. After the doctor (examine) the child he (have) a talk with the mother.
3. When I (call) on my friend, he (go) out.
4. Mary (finish) her homework when her father (come) home from his office.
5. I (throw) away the newspaper after I (read) it.

6. After she (spend) all her money she (ask) her father to help her.
7. The teacher (give) back the exercise books after he (correct) them.
8. The sun (rise) when the farmer (start) work.

**Exercise 32.** Use *the present perfect, present perfect continuous, past perfect* or the *past perfect continuous* tense of the verbs given in the parentheses.

1. She (study) since six o'clock this morning.
2. Helen (leave) by the time we arrived.
3. John (be) to Italy.
4. The teacher returned the papers we (prepare) for her.
5. I (know) him for many years.
6. He (work) there for six years when he decided to quit.
7. She (make) ten long-distance telephone calls this morning.
8. David (write) letters all morning.

**Exercise 33.** Write the form of the verb specified in parentheses.

1. Before Mr. Kaufman's fourth child was born he (buy / past perfect) a heavy-duty clothes washer.
2. Unfortunately, Adam (forget/ past perfect) to attend his memory skills seminar.
3. By this time tomorrow, Tim (drive / future perfect) across four states.
4. Ira showed me the rubber snake he (win / past perfect) at the state fair.
5. Scientists (measure / present perfect) winds of more than 150 miles an hour during severe thunderstorms.
6. Over the summer Ronnie (learn / past perfect) to dance the rumba, the tango, and the lambada.
7. By Tuesday I (spend / future perfect) my whole pay check.
8. Arthur (take / present perfect) four days off this week in order to participate in a croquet tournament.
9. By next year Eloise and Isaac (build / future perfect) their own log cabin.
10. Carmel's mathematics professor (inspire / present perfect) her to become a math major.

**Exercise 34.** Choose the right variant.

1. Everything is going well. We didn't have / haven't had any problems so far.
2. Margaret didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday.
3. Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4. Your son is much taller than when I last saw him. He grew / has grown a lot.
5. I still don't know what to do. I didn't decide / haven't decided yet.
6. I wonder why Jim is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
7. Jane had a book open in front of her but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8. I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.

9. Mary wasn't happy in her new job at first but she begins / is beginning to enjoy it now.
10. After leaving school, Tim found / has found it very difficult to get a job.
11. When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12. This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Is this the first time you are / you've been here?
13. I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
14. Ann has gone out. — Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?
15. You look tired. — Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball.
16. Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17. I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
18. Bob and Alice have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

**Exercise 35.** Use correct future tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I (finish) my homework by the time I go out.
2. When my brother (arrive) we will have a party.
3. At this time next year he (live) in Hawaii.
4. As soon as it stops raining we (leave).
5. By the time you come, he (study) for two hours.
6. John (buy) a house next year.
7. He (come) late.
8. They (play) for three hours by the time we have dinner.

**Exercise 36.** Choose the *simple or progressive* form of the verb.

1. Mary always (buys / is buying) a lot of clothes.
2. He (looked / was looking) at the picture when we saw him.
3. Somebody (was breaking / broke) two windows last night.
4. He (thought / was thinking) about his mother when the door opened.
5. The President (thought / was thinking) that the war should stop.
6. How long is it since you (were buying / bought) that coat?
7. Shut up, John! You (are / are being) very noisy today!
8. I can't remember all the film, but I'm sure I must (have seen / have been seen) it before.
9. I'll give you a ring when I'm in Paris. Where (will you stay / will you be staying)?
10. I don't know where Henry is. He should (have arrived / have been arriving) long before this.

**Exercise 37.** Correct any mistakes in the verb tenses.

1. He is working for Sony since he came to the United States.
2. Most of the children in my country are wearing a uniform to school.
3. A teacher doesn't want to have students in her class who had caused a lot of trouble.

4. In kindergarten, teachers usually are teaching students the alphabet and the spelling of simple words.
5. In the picture, the woman who sits in the middle looks like the most powerful member of the family.
6. We see a lot of changes in China because right now a lot of people trying hard to educate themselves.
7. This is the first time that my brother was in the hospital.
8. They are sitting in the restaurant for the last three hours.
9. They will start building a new house as soon as they will get a mortgage.
10. Most people are doing exercises after work.

**Exercise 38.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. I have been in Mexico during the summer of 1970.
2. Mary had prepared dinner when I arrived, so we were able to eat immediately.
3. Three years ago he had been a student at a university in California.
4. We have collected stamps for many years.
5. We took the bus downtown, did a few errands, and had gone to lunch.
6. Since he bought a new car, he has been driving to work every day.
7. Last night they have recognized us from the party we went to earlier in the week.
8. Since Ted graduated, he has been working with his father.
9. The doctor had seen ten patients since eight o'clock this morning.
10. He is studying English for the last five years.

**Exercise 39. TEST.** Find the correct form of the verb.

1. Who speaks French in your family? — I \_\_\_\_.  
(A) have (B) do (C) am
2. When \_\_\_\_ you buy the new TV set?  
(A) did (B) were (C) are
3. We \_\_\_\_ never been to London.  
(A) had (B) were (C) have
4. Where \_\_\_\_ you going when I met you last night?  
(A) did (B) were (C) are
5. \_\_\_\_ your friend like to watch TV in the evening?  
(A) do (B) does (C) is
6. What are you doing? — I \_\_\_\_ reading a book.  
(A) was (B) am (C) is
7. We thought they \_\_\_\_ be late.  
(A) would (B) shall (C) will
8. Many new buildings \_\_\_\_ built in our town last year.  
(A) had (B) are (C) were

9. The letter \_\_\_ sent tomorrow.  
(A) will be (B) has (C) will
10. I \_\_\_ Dick today.  
(A) haven't seen (B) hadn't seen (C) didn't see
11. Were you tired after skiing yesterday? — Yes, I \_\_\_\_.  
(A) were (B) did (C) was
12. When we came into the hall they \_\_\_ this problem.  
(A) were discussing (B) discussed (C) have discussed
13. We \_\_\_ from the institute in five years.  
(A) have graduated (B) graduated (C) shall graduate
14. Don't go out. It \_\_\_ hard.  
(A) is raining (B) was raining (C) rains
15. They \_\_\_ the institute five years ago.  
(A) have entered (B) entered (C) had entered
16. Does the professor \_\_\_ a lot of experience?  
(A) has (B) have (C) had
17. Did he \_\_\_ the weekend in the country?  
(A) spent (B) spend (C) spends
18. I shall call you as soon as I \_\_\_ home.  
(A) came (B) shall come (C) come
19. The report \_\_\_ ready by 6 o'clock yesterday.  
(A) was (B) has been (C) had been
20. She usually \_\_\_ to bed very early.  
(A) goes (B) has gone (C) going

***What auxiliary verbs will be used to put a question to the following sentences:***

- (A) do (B) did (C) does (D) had

21. Mary goes in for skating.
22. I like skiing in the forest.
23. First spring flowers appeared in the fields.
24. She had to miss the last lecture.

***Choose the English equivalents for the words given in brackets:***

25. The meeting (началось) at 5 o'clock.  
(A) has begun (B) began (C) was beginning
26. At 5 o'clock yesterday I (ехал) to the station.  
(A) was going (B) was gone (C) went
27. I (не перевел) this text yet.  
(A) didn't translate (B) haven't translated (C) hadn't translated

**Exercise 40. TEST.** Find the correct form of the verb.

1. How long \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ English?  
(A) do \_\_\_ learn  
(B) have \_\_\_ been learning  
(C) are \_\_\_ learning
2. She \_\_\_ tennis since she was eight.  
(A) has been playing  
(B) plays  
(C) is playing
3. Bob has a black eye and Bill has a cut lip. Bob and Bill \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) were fighting  
(B) fought  
(C) have been fighting
4. You have just arrived to meet your friend who is waiting for you. \_\_\_ he \_\_\_ long?  
(A) has \_\_\_ been waiting  
(B) has \_\_\_ waited  
(C) does \_\_\_ wait
5. George smokes. He \_\_\_ for five years.  
(A) is smoking  
(B) has been smoking  
(C) has smoked
6. We \_\_\_ with my model railway since early morning, — said Jim.  
(A) are playing  
(B) play  
(C) have been playing
7. Linda is from Australia. Now she is travelling round Europe. She began her tour three months ago. She \_\_\_ six countries so far.  
(A) has visited  
(B) has been visiting  
(C) visited
8. There is a strange smell in the kitchen. \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ something?  
(A) Did \_\_\_ cook  
(B) Have \_\_\_ cooked  
(C) Have \_\_\_ been cooking

9. Tom's hands are very dirty. He \_\_\_ his car for the whole morning.  
(A) has repaired  
(B) was repairing  
(C) has been repairing
10. Jim \_\_\_ tennis three times this week.  
(A) has been playing  
(B) has played  
(C) is playing
11. Somebody \_\_\_ all my porridge. The plate is empty.  
(A) has eaten  
(B) has been eaten  
(C) is eating
12. He \_\_\_ our family since we came to London.  
(A) has been knowing  
(B) knew  
(C) has known
13. I \_\_\_ Ann for a long time.  
(A) haven't seen  
(B) didn't see  
(C) has known
14. I was very tired when I arrived home. I \_\_\_ hard all day.  
(A) was working  
(B) had worked  
(C) had been working
15. Tom was watching TV. He was feeling very tired. He \_\_\_ all day.  
(A) was studying  
(B) had been studying  
(C) studying
16. I tried to call Jack but I couldn't. He \_\_\_ very fast.  
(A) had been running  
(B) ran  
(C) was running

17. We \_\_\_ along the road for about 20 minutes when a car stopped and the driver offered us a lift.  
(A) were walking  
(B) had been walking  
(C) walked
18. When I arrived, Ann \_\_\_ for me.  
(A) was waiting  
(B) had been waiting  
(C) had waited.
19. Mr. and Mrs. Jenkins \_\_\_ in the south of France for six months when Mr. Jenkins died.  
(A) lived  
(B) were living  
(C) had been living
20. When I arrived, everyone was sitting around the table with their mouths full. They \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) had been eating  
(B) were eating  
(C) ate

## **8. SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT**

**Exercise 41.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Everyone (complains, complain) when gas prices go up.
2. Most of Benito's shirts (has, have) at least one pocket.
3. Somebody (is, are) addressing all the wedding invitations with a fountain pen.
4. Everyone in the Hundley family (buys, buy) a new toothbrush twice a year.
5. Few of my friends (dislikes, dislike) both crunchy peanut butter and the smooth variety.
6. Nobody (remembers, remember) that the space between the thumb and the first finger is called the purlicue.
7. Some of the children (stops, stop) at the ice cream shop every day.
8. Nothing (ends, end) the baby's crying except being rocked in the rocking chair.
9. All of the workers who enter by the main gate (passes, pass) through a metal detector.
10. Each of the messages on the answering machine (is, are) for Dody.

**Exercise 42.** Choose the correct form from the parentheses.

1. Every participant (has / have) been notified of the change in schedule.
2. The old lady and her twelve cats (was / were) evicted from the apartment.
3. Everyone (is / are) bringing a homemade dish.
4. Neither of the cars in the accident (was / were) insured.
5. Most of the rooms in the hotel (have / has) air-conditioning.
6. John, together with his wife and two children, (is / are) going to dinner.
7. One of the speakers (is / are) not here yet.
8. No news (is / are) good news.

**Exercise 43.** Choose the correct form from the parentheses.

1. Neither Mary nor her friends (is / are) going to have a party.
2. A number of graduates (have / has) received scholarship from this department.
3. All of the money (was / were) found.
4. Every man and woman (has / have) the right to vote.
5. The number of car accidents (is / are) increasing every year.
6. Both corn and wheat (is / are) grown in Canada.
7. Most of our furniture (is / are) in storage.
8. My new pair of pants (is / are) at the cleaners.
9. The Chinese (was / were) drinking tea in the year 2000 B.C.
10. The police (is / are) on the alert for the escaped convict.

**Exercise 44.** Find the correct form of the given verb in the following sentences.

1. One of the students in my class (come) from Bangladesh.
2. The people who have invited me to the opening of the exhibition (want) me to write an article about it afterward.
3. Almost everyone in my class (have) a part-time job.
4. Writing essays (require) a lot of skill.
5. Neither his wife nor his children (know) that he has lost his job.
6. Every book that is assigned for this course (cost) more than \$20.
7. The president and his wife (have) agreed to attend the ceremony.
8. My sister always (try) her hardest.
9. Today's news (be) surprising.
10. The bunch of flowers that she (want) to buy (be) very expensive.

**Exercise 45.** Underline the form from that correctly completes each sentence.

1. Ethics (is / are) the study of moral duties, principles, and values.
2. The first bridge to be build with electric lights (was / were) the Brooklyn Bridge.

3. There (is / are) two types of calculus, differential and integral.
4. George Gershwin, together with his brother Ira, (was / were) the creator of the first musical comedy to win Pulitzer Prize.
5. In a chess game, the player with the white pieces always (moves / move) first.
6. The Earth and Pluto (is / are) the only two planets in the solar system believed to have a single moon.
7. A number of special conditions (is / are) necessary for the formation of a geyser.
8. Each of the Ice Ages (was / were) more than a million years long.
9. The battery, along with the alternator and starter, (makes / make) up the electrical system of a car.
10. Teeth (is / are) covered with a hard substance called enamel.
11. The more-or-less rhythmic succession of economic booms and busts (is / are) referred to as the business cycle.
12. The number of chromosomes in a cell (varies / vary) from species to species.
13. All trees, except for the tree fern, (is / are) seed bearing plants.
14. Fifteen hundred dollars a year (was / were) the per-capita income in the United States in 1950.
15. Everyone who (goes / go) into the woods should recognize common poisonous plants such as poison ivy and poison oak.

**Exercise 46.** Underline the subject of the missing verb and fill in the blanks with "is" or "are".

1. Neither the doctor nor the nurses \_\_\_ here.
2. The number of nurses in the city \_\_\_ very large.
3. All of nurses \_\_\_ very good.
4. All of the medicine \_\_\_ gone.
5. Some of the water \_\_\_ used for irrigation.
6. Most of the money \_\_\_ counterfeit.
7. Not only the money but also the jewels \_\_\_ locked up in the safe.
8. Neither the jewels nor the money \_\_\_ mine.
9. All of the cookies \_\_\_ gone.
10. Half of the furniture \_\_\_ in the truck.
11. Neither of the reporters \_\_\_ allowed to interview the players.
12. Everyone \_\_\_ required to write a composition.
13. Every man, woman, and child \_\_\_ given a free ticket.
14. Everything in the house \_\_\_ destroyed by the fire.

**Exercise 47.** Underline the subject of each sentence and fill in the blanks with "is" or "are".

1. The crew \_\_\_ asleep in their bunks down in the hold of the ship.
2. Several unusual species of birds \_\_\_ found in this area.
3. When a young deer \_\_\_ motionless, its coloring will hide it well.

4. The committee \_\_\_ ready to make its recommendations public.
5. Both apparatus \_\_\_ available for your use.
6. The family \_\_\_ fighting among themselves constantly.
7. The fish in the aquarium \_\_\_ waiting for their daily feeding.
8. Each of those species of birds \_\_\_ common in Texas.
9. All sheep \_\_\_ dipped in the spring to kill the parasites.
10. The press \_\_\_ requested to show their credentials to the guard.

**Exercise 48.** Underline the subject and fill in the blanks with "is" or "are".

1. Alumni of the university \_\_\_ invited to the graduation ceremony.
2. English \_\_\_ heard all over the world.
3. The Portuguese \_\_\_ fortunate to have such a beautiful coastline.
4. Many Vietnamese \_\_\_ living in the United States.
5. The criteria for promotion \_\_\_ clearly stated.
6. The appendices \_\_\_ usually found at the back of a book.
7. Supernatural phenomena \_\_\_ of great interest to many people.
8. Few \_\_\_ strong enough to finish the race.
9. There \_\_\_ a pair of sunglasses lying on the floor.
10. Both my good trousers and my old jeans \_\_\_ at the laundry.
11. Many of you \_\_\_ going to score above 500 on the TOEFL.
12. There \_\_\_ several books on the top shelf of the bookcase.

**Exercise 49.** Underline the subject and fill in the blanks with "is" or "are".

1. Nylon, like orlon \_\_\_ synthetic.
2. Either his children or his wife \_\_\_ arriving today.
3. Both the chair and the sofa \_\_\_ on sale.
4. Every dog and cat \_\_\_ vaccinated against rabies.
5. There \_\_\_ several universities in the city.
6. It \_\_\_ the bicyclists who endanger the joggers.
7. The New York Times \_\_\_ read by many people.
8. Everyone in the class \_\_\_ working hard.
9. All of the creeks \_\_\_ polluted.
10. All of the water \_\_\_ contaminated.
11. The committee \_\_\_ having its meeting.
12. The committee \_\_\_ separated from their families for long periods of time.
13. Two hundred dollars \_\_\_ a lot of money to lose.
14. Mathematics \_\_\_ a pure science.
15. A number of doctors \_\_\_ employed by the hospital.
16. The number of female doctors \_\_\_ growing.
17. The English \_\_\_ well known for their love of tea.

18. The hypothesis \_\_\_ supported by the data.
19. The young deer \_\_\_ staying near their mothers.
20. Those species of fish \_\_\_ found in Texas lakes.

**Exercise 50.** Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural.

1. The trousers you bought for me (doesn't / don't) fit me.
2. Physics (was / were) my best subject at school.
3. Fortunately the news (wasn't / weren't) as bad as we had expected.
4. The police (wants / want) to interview Fred about a robbery.
5. Three days (isn't / aren't) long enough for a good holiday.
6. Where (does / do) your family live?
7. England (has / have) lost all their football matches this season.
8. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine (isn't / aren't) sharp enough.
9. I'm going to take a taxi. Six miles (is / are) too far for me to walk.

## **9. PRONOUNS**

**Exercise 51.** Choose the correct pronoun.

1. Mary is heavier than (me / I).
2. It must be (her / she).
3. John and (I / me) went to the movies.
4. Is it true that (he / him) is here?
5. Who is at the door? — It is (I / me).
6. She isn't so fast as (he / him).
7. (He / Him) and his father are both very tall.
8. It was (they / them) who told us.
9. Just between you and (I / me) Marcy's hair is fright.
10. She went with Babs and (I / me) to a new hairdresser.
11. Babs and (I / me) looked totally fabulous with our new hairdos.
12. Who would have guessed that (his / him) teasing my hair would make such a difference?
13. The hairdresser liked my hair more than (I, me).

**Exercise 52.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Eric plays the piano as well as (I / me).
2. I hope you'll stop in to visit Nancy and (I / me), — said Mr. Berkowitz.
3. Disabled Vietnam veterans spearheaded a drive for equal rights that has benefited all of (us / we) disabled people.
4. Tim says Tiffany is not older than (he, him).

4. (Us / We) baby-sitters can experience baby-sitter burnout after a few years of caring for children.
6. Misty's father asked (her / she) and (I / me) to wait on the steps.
7. Mrs. Grailish chose Lloyd rather than Martha because she likes Lloyd better than (her / she).
8. (He / Him) and Kathleen are dissatisfied with the way their company evaluates employees' performance.
10. (Us / We) dog lovers were impressed by Jim's willingness to carry his seventy- pound dog up and down the stairs every day.
10. Daniel said his mother sent a box of fudge to Sam and (he / him).

**Exercise 53.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. I was surprised to learn that Betty and him were hurt in the accident.
2. I often remember when Paul and I visited Rome.
3. He moved the furniture by hisself.
4. She gave us, Margaret and I, the notes we missed in class.
5. They were sitting by themselves next to the swimming pool.
6. That project is the responsibility of Susan and she.
7. Let us keep this secret between you and me.
8. Do not forget to give the message to Bob and me.
9. The tourists asked us, my cousin and me, how to get to the museum.
10. Please be sure to notify my husband or I when the package arrives.
11. The children assembled the toy house by theirselves.
12. How often do you have the opportunity to meet a man as intelligent as him?
13. For the majority of us the issue is rather confusing.
14. Mary will never be as rich as I.
15. It is her, the one whom nobody likes.

**Exercise 54.** Correct the object pronouns in these sentences where necessary.

1. Could you please explain this exercise to her?
2. John sat between Helen and I.
3. She goes with they to the movies.
4. He understands her better than him.
5. Between you and I, I didn't like the food.
6. What is the matter with she?
7. He told Mary and me about the trip.
8. She gets along with him better than me.

**Exercise 55.** Fill in the blanks with the correct possessive adjective or pronoun.

1. She loves \_\_\_ dog.
2. The dog wags \_\_\_ tail when it's happy.
3. The boys are playing with \_\_\_ toy cars.
4. We have several trees in \_\_\_ garden.
5. He was very nice and I appreciated \_\_\_ calling me.
6. I have had \_\_\_ dinner.
7. Her mother is very warm and I loved \_\_\_ cooking.
8. I know Bob. He was \_\_\_ classmate at college.
9. I've mislaid my pencil. May I borrow \_\_\_?
10. Bob wants you to return that book of \_\_\_ which you borrowed last month.
11. We had a test too, but yours was harder than \_\_\_.
12. Is this your coat? — Yes, it's \_\_\_.
13. I was on time for my class but Jane was late for \_\_\_.
14. We've already had lunch. Have you had \_\_\_?
15. We've got our tickets. Have they got \_\_\_?
16. Joanne knows him. He's a neighbour of \_\_\_.

**Exercise 56.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. Is this clarinet yours?
2. Mary Lee picked up my briefcase, and now I'm stuck with her's.
3. Our neighbours' lawns are always better kept than our's.
4. Gene always has trouble understanding his telephone bill.
5. I wish I could find dress shoes as attractive and comfortable as your's.
6. Lauren told me that the idea for the new advertising campaign was hers.
8. Our telephone is made of white plastic, and theirs' is made of brass and polished wood.
9. I told the eye doctor that I was seeing lines and spots dancing across my field of vision.
9. Stuart has spent his' life on the road, moving from city to city.
10. Because the state faces a huge deficit, programs and jobs may be cut, including ours.
11. Please tell the people in the copying department that these folders are theirs', not mine.

**Exercise 57.** Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronoun.

1. The little boy hurt \_\_\_ when he fell.
2. Be careful not to cut \_\_\_ with that knife.
3. She lives by \_\_\_.
4. We enjoyed \_\_\_.

5. The children decorated the room \_\_\_\_.
6. I blamed \_\_\_\_ for losing the job.
7. The cat defended \_\_\_\_ against the big dog.
8. They are going to paint the house by \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 58.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. Kelly and myself like the arms and armor collection better than any other part of the museum.
2. The Ivanovs had planned to go to the wedding reception with us, but they ended up going by themself.
3. William F.Cody called himself Buffalo Bill.
4. The questionnaires are for Marshall and myself.
5. Sheila cut herself when she opened the package of brownies.
6. You advanced students can do the problems yourself and then check the answers in the back of the book.
7. Steven and Hope blame theirselves for causing the fight between their parents.
8. Doing a job yourself is the only you can ensure that it gets done right.
9. Curtis changed the oil hisself.
10. Sandra and Joan washed themselves thoroughly after coming in from the garden.
11. The cat lets itself in and out through the little swinging door in the kitchen.

**Exercise 59.** Choose the interrogative pronoun that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. (Who, Whom) argues that certain kinds of objects now in European and American museums should be returned to the countries from which they originally came?
2. (Whoever, Whomever) spilled the grape juice on the kitchen floor should clean it up immediately.
3. The shiny covering of a spacesuit reflects heat away from an astronaut, for (who, whom) intense heat could otherwise be very dangerous.
4. The note taped to the front door began, "To (whoever, whomever) it may concern."
5. A person (who, whom) has made insurance claims is likely to face an increase in his or her insurance rates.
6. From (who, whom) did you get that impression?
7. As far as I'm concerned, you can go to the races with (whoever, whomever) you choose.
8. The people (who, whom) live near the airport have complained for years about the noise and air pollution caused by jets.
9. (Whoever, Whomever) wants these old magazines can have them.
10. To (who, whom) did you wish to send these roses, sir?

**Exercise 60.** Correct the relative pronouns where necessary.

1. The artist whom exhibition we saw last week is a concert pianist also.
2. The gold that you saw was mined from the sea.
3. It was your school counsellor whom called you.
4. The devastation which the tornado had brought about was unbelievable.
5. Some scientists believe that the Americans were populated by groups of Siberian hunters which crossed the Bering strait.
6. The professor which you spoke to yesterday is not here today.
7. The condors whom live in California are becoming extinct.
8. The student whose paper you have read is sitting there.

**Exercise 61.** Most of the following sentences contain a mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. If blast furnaces are allowed to cool, it can crack.
2. Are teenagers less healthy today than their parents were as teenagers?
3. A small amount of water in an outboard motor's ignition system can prevent them from starting.
4. Many people dislike the Susan B. Anthony dollar because it seems too much like a quarter.
5. The tail portion of the plane gives them stability.
6. In some African countries the ways a woman's hair is braided tells whether or not she is married.
7. Tinted car windows reduce sun glare but it can decrease visibility at night.
8. Before World War I most Americans did not brush their teeth.
9. Air conditioners are useful to allergy sufferers because it can remove pollen from the air.
10. If you put mulch around your trees, you don't need to mow as close to them.
11. A horse's fetlock is on the back of their leg, above the hoof.

**Exercise 62.** Find one mistake in each of the following sentences. Some may need pronouns, some have the wrong pronouns, and some have extra pronouns.

1. My mother she is always late picking me up.
2. Little children often need help with his homework.
3. Each of the students brought their own pencil.
4. The XYZ company is famous for their strict hiring policies.
5. Dogs get nutrients into systems from good dog food.
6. Computers they are always malfunctioning.
7. There are many different styles, and it is all beautiful.

8. The longest day of the year around here it is June 21.
9. She made a delicious meal but didn't enjoy.
10. Marlee Matlin won their only Academy Award for 'Children of a Lesser God'.

**Exercise 63.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. The choir gives (its, their) concert on the third Sunday in May.
2. The Fire Company held (its, their) election of the officers last week.
3. Either Jo or Martha gives (her, their) oral report today.
4. The commission planning the redevelopment of the waterfront present (its, their) proposal to the major next week.
5. Either the cat or its kittens left (its, their) toy mouse in the middle of the living room.
6. A group of park workers use (its, their) own cars to patrol the park at night.
7. The U.S. Army Band presents (its, their) free concert on the lawn of the Whitman Stafford farmhouse Friday at 7:30 p.m.
8. Neither Rebecca nor Kit will tell us how much (she, they) weighs.
9. The jazz dance group has (its, their) rehearsal every Thursday.
10. The afternoon kindergarten class meets (its, their) new teacher for the first time today.
11. Either Ozzie or Brad left (his, their) gym bag in the locker room.

## **10. VERBS AS COMPLIMENTS**

**Exercise 64.** Use a correct form of the given verb in each sentence (infinitive with or without **to** or the **-ing** form).

1. They want (arrange) all the details carefully.
2. You can't expect your boss (wait) for you all day.
3. They really enjoy (have) nothing to do.
4. He hasn't finished (write) his essay yet.
5. She complained about (be) the only person without the books.
6. They forced the hostage (lie) on the floor.
7. Then they made them (close) their eyes.
8. Is it difficult (make) an omelette?
9. When did you last go (skate)?

**Exercise 65.** Put the verb into the correct form (**to+infinitive** or **-ing**).

1. I enjoy (be) alone.
2. Would you like (come) to a party?
3. Do you mind (travel) such a long way to work every day?
4. Ann loves (cook) but she hates (wash) dishes.

5. I can't stand people (tell) me what to do when I'm driving.
6. I don't like that house. I would hate (live) there.
7. Do you like (drive)?
8. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried about missing it. So I like (get) to the station in plenty of time.
9. I very much enjoy (listen) to classical music.
10. I would love (come) to your wedding but it just isn't possible.
11. Sometimes I'd like (learn) to play the guitar.

**Exercise 66.** Put the verb into the correct form (infinitive or the **-ing** form).

1. Mr. Thomas doesn't like (smoke) in his office.
2. Mr. Thomas doesn't let anyone (smoke) in his office.
3. I don't know Jack but I'd like (meet) him.
4. Where would you recommend me (go) for my holidays?
5. I don't suggest (eat) in that restaurant. The food is awful.
6. The film was very sad. It made me (cry).
7. Jack's parents have always encouraged him (study) hard.
8. We were kept at the police station for an hour and then allowed (go).

**Exercise 67.** Put the verb into the correct form (infinitive or **-ing** form).

1. I would like (travel) all over the world.
2. I think Mary has a good chance of (win) the election on Sunday.
3. We expect (arrive) at the station at 4:30 on Saturday.
4. Do you think Ann will agree (have) the meeting in her office?
5. If the phone doesn't stop (ring), I'm going to throw it out of the window.
6. When did you start (learn) Chinese?
7. They hope (go) to the meeting in Helsinki next year.
8. Doesn't your brother want (learn) (drive)?
9. My sister likes (swim), but she doesn't like swimming pools.
10. My cousin doesn't really need (work), but he enjoys (be) around people and (do) something useful.
11. (Eat) fatty foods, (drink) alcohol and (smoke) are all bad for your heart.
12. After (work) all day, I don't really feel like going out in the evening.

**Exercise 68.** Choose the infinitive or the **-ing** form.

1. I'm very bad at (to play / playing) the piano.
2. Would you like (to go / going) horse riding with me?
3. I hope (to learn / learning) to play badminton next winter.
4. (To fish / Fishing) helps me to relax.
5. Thank you for (to take / taking) me windsurfing.
6. You can't expect (to be / being) good at a sport the very first time you try it.

7. Could you teach me how (to play / playing) chess?
8. She really loves (to collect / collecting) stamps.
9. I can't live without (to listen / listening) to music.
10. (To parachute / Parachuting) can be quite dangerous if you don't know what you are doing.
11. I'm good at (to waterski / waterskiing), but my husband can't do it at all.

## **11. PRONOUNS AS COMPLIMENTS**

**Exercise 69.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. (Marcy, Marcy's) getting elected was mostly a matter of luck.
2. Sean and Joe say that (their, them) buying special spiked boots was necessary for ice climbing.
3. (You, Your) wearing camouflage pants all the time actually makes you stand out in a crowd.
4. (Jessie, Jessie's) wearing a black dress for her wedding caused several arguments in our family.
5. The worst mistake was (me, my) buying platinum from a telephone salesperson.
6. (Clay, Clay's) acting calmly helped me to calm down.
7. My (dentist, dentist's) leaving the television set on all the time distracts me while I am having my teeth filled.
8. Buzz knew that (him, his) parallel parking might cause him to fail his driver's test.
9. (Lucy, Lucy's) carrying a set of skeleton keys in her purse worried her friends.
10. Everyone in Leah's house woke up because of (her, she) dropping the fishing tackle on the kitchen floor.

## **12. THE VERB NEED**

**Exercise 70.** Make sentences with *need* and *-ing*. Use the verb in brackets.

Example: This coat is rather dirty. (clean) It needs cleaning.

1. This room hasn't been painted for years. (paint)
2. Your hair is too long. (cut)
3. Those shoes are rather dirty. (polish)
4. This plant hasn't been watered for some time. (water)
5. Those screws are loose. (tighten)
5. Your jeans are too long. (take up)

**Exercise 71.** Put the verb in parentheses into the correct form.

1. The chair is broken. I need (fix) it. The chair needs (fix).
2. What a mess! This room needs (clean) up. We need (clean) it up before the company arrives.
3. The baby's diaper needs (change). It's wet.
4. My shirt is wrinkled. It needs (iron).
5. There is a hole on our roof. The roof needs (repair).
6. I have books and paper all over my desk. I need (take) some time to straighten my desk. It needs (straighten) up.
7. The apples on the tree are ripe. They need (pick).
8. The dog needs (wash). He's been digging in the mud.
9. His car needs (fix).
10. The rug needs (clean) before we move in.
11. The house needs (paint), but we plan to wait until next summer to do it.
12. Her watch needed (repair).
13. The hem of this dress needs (mend) before I wear it again.

### **13. QUESTIONS**

#### **INFORMATION QUESTIONS**

**Exercise 72.** Fill in the blanks a suitable question word.

(A) Why      (B) What      (C) How      (D) Where

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ___ are you thinking about?              | 12. ___ don't we go shopping this afternoon?     |
| 2. ___ is the nearest telephone?            | 13. ___ much are these trousers?                 |
| 3. ___ are you doing now?                   | 14. ___ tall is he?                              |
| 4. ___ don't you wear this sweater?         | 15. ___ does your granny live?                   |
| 5. ___ do they get to school?               | 16. ___ many people live there?                  |
| 6. ___ does your father go on Mondays?      | 17. ___ are they from?                           |
| 7. ___ didn't you come to school yesterday? | 18. ___ far is your school from our house?       |
| 8. ___ is she wearing?                      | 19. ___ don't we have a game together some time? |
| 9. ___ do you think of Mike?                | 20. ___ exams have you passed?                   |
| 10. ___ often does he go running?           |  |
| 11. ___ time do you get back?               |  |

**Exercise 73.** Tony is being interviewed for a job. Look at the interviewer's notes and Tony's answers, then write the questions she is asking Tony.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. age?               | I'm 18.             |
| 2. live locally?      | Yes, I do.          |
| 3. address?           | 5, Flower Close.    |
| 4. when/leave school? | Last year.          |
| 5. which school/go?   | Benham School.      |
| 6. work/now?          | Yes, I am.          |
| 7. who/work for?      | Millers Limited.    |
| 8. how long?          | For six months.     |
| 9. enjoy/present job? | Yes, I do.          |
| 10. why/want leave?   | The pay isn't good. |

**Exercise 74. TEST.** Below are the answers to 30 questions. Ask those questions.

Example: Q: Where does she live?  
 A: She lives in Grimsby.  
 Q: At what time did he come back?  
 A: He came back at 7.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. Q: __?           | A: Yes, he knows where it comes from.                |
| 2. Q: __?           | A: No, we didn't hear from him yesterday.            |
| 3. Q: Where__?      | A: He came from Leeds.                               |
| 4. Q: When__?       | A: I saw her three days ago.                         |
| 5. Q: How often__?  | A: The trains stop at this station every 20 minutes. |
| 6. Q: Where__?      | A: We went to Switzerland for our holiday.           |
| 7. Q: How much__?   | A: It costs three pounds.                            |
| 8. Q: What__?       | A: We had only an egg for breakfast.                 |
| 9. Q: Where__?      | A: They found him in the street.                     |
| 10. Q: __?          | A: Yes, he told me that story again.                 |
| 11. Q: __?          | A: No, thank you. I don't take milk.                 |
| 12. Q: __?          | A: Yes, she does her room herself.                   |
| 13. Q: Where__?     | A: He put it in his room.                            |
| 14. Q: Where__?     | A: She usually puts it in her handbag.               |
| 15. Q: What__?      | A: He likes pop music best.                          |
| 16. Q: How often__? | A: The clock struck every half hour.                 |
| 17. Q: __?          | A: Yes, we planned to buy a new car.                 |
| 18. Q: Where__?     | A: Max read it in the Daily News.                    |
| 19. Q: __?          | A: No, Max doesn't read the Daily News very often.   |
| 20. Q: What__?      | A: Mr. Smith took the 4:59 train from Dorking.       |
| 21. Q: Why__?       | A: She looks so happy because she's met a friend.    |
| 22. Q: __?          | A: No, I don't have any more questions to ask you.   |
| 23. Q: Who__?       | A: Bill lent it to his sister.                       |

24. Q: How often\_\_? A: They meet once a week.  
 25. Q: Why\_\_? A: We ran because we were late.  
 26. Q: At what time\_\_? A: This shop closes at 6.  
 27. Q: Which of them\_\_? A: He chose the red one.  
 28. Q: What\_\_? A: She says nothing.  
 29. Q: At what time\_\_? A: They got home at five in the morning.  
 30 Q: \_\_? A: Yes, this is all for today.

**Exercise 75.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. I've just met Simon. — Oh, have you? How is he?
2. He's very well. — Oh, isn't he? And you?
3. I'm feeling tired. — Oh, do you?
4. Yes, I went for a long walk yesterday. — Oh, went you?
5. Yes, I walked to a lovely town. — Did you?
6. Yes, but it was very strange. — Wasn't it?
7. Yes, it didn't have any parking place. — Oh, didn't they?
8. No, and there weren't any cars. — Really?
9. No, but everyone had bicycles. — Oh, had they?
10. Yes, it's a really clean town. — Has it?
11. I want to live there. — Oh, did you?
12. Yes, it looks perfect. — Oh, does it?

### EMBEDDED QUESTIONS

**Exercise 76.** Change the question to a noun clause.

Example: How old is he? — I don't know how old he is.

What was he talking about? — What he was talking about was interesting.

1. Where do you live? — Please, tell me \_\_\_\_.
2. What did she say? — \_\_\_\_ wasn't true.
3. When are they coming? — So you know \_\_\_\_.
4. How much does it cost? — I can't remember \_\_\_\_.
5. Which one does he want? — Let's ask him \_\_\_\_.
6. Who is coming to the party? — I don't know \_\_\_\_.
7. Who are those people? — I don't know \_\_\_\_.
8. Whose pen is this? — Do you know \_\_\_\_?
9. Why did they leave the country? — \_\_\_\_ is a secret.
10. What are we doing in class? — \_\_\_\_ is easy.
11. Where did she go? — \_\_\_\_ is none of your business.

12. How many letters are there in the English alphabet? — I don't remember \_\_\_\_.
13. Who is the mayor of New York City? — I don't know \_\_\_\_.
14. How old does a person have to be to get a driver's license? — I need to find out \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 77.** Make a new sentence from these questions.

1. Where has Tom gone? — Do you know \_\_\_\_?
2. Where is the post office? — Could you tell me \_\_\_\_?
3. What does this word mean? — Do you know \_\_\_\_?
4. What's the time? — I wonder \_\_\_\_.
5. Where did you park your car? — Can't you remember \_\_\_\_?
6. Is Ann coming to the meeting? — I don't know \_\_\_\_.
7. Where does Jack live? — Have you any idea \_\_\_\_?
8. What time did he leave? — Do you know \_\_\_\_?
9. Where can I change some money? — Could you tell me \_\_\_\_?
10. What qualifications do I need? — I want to know \_\_\_\_.
11. Why didn't Tom come to the party? — I don't know \_\_\_\_.
12. How much does it cost to park here? — Do you know \_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 78.** Find mistakes and correct them.

1. Have ever you been to Thailand?
2. What means this word?
3. How much costs it to fly to Australia from here?
4. We can't remember where did we put our passports.
5. Had the play already started when you got to the theatre?
6. Now, come and sit down. Would you like to explain what is the problem?
7. How long did it you take to get here?
8. Now I understand why didn't you tell me about your job!
9. Excuse me. Can you tell me where the dictionaries are?
10. Why people in your country don't show more respect to the elderly?
11. I did not understand what they meant.
12. Do you know where is John?
13. I was surprised when he told me how much does he study every day.
14. He told me when he was free during the week.
15. Tell me where they do go after class every day.

**Exercise 79.** Define whether the sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. I will ask how much do they sell for.
2. Did the professor tell you when is the text test?
3. I wonder when it is going to begin.
4. Forget about where we are going to play tennis as it is starting to rain.
5. Did you see what did he do?

6. Do you remember how much the tuition was?
7. Ask the operator what is the charge for a three-minute call to New York.
8. We don't know when will we see our friends again.
9. He forgot where he had parked his car.
10. Would you please ask them where is the subway entrance?
11. He sent a telegram saying when he would arrive.
12. I forgot to ask him what time does the class begin.
13. Bill did not realize what time it was when I knocked on the door.
14. Can you tell us who that distinguished-looking gentleman is?
15. Ask Mr. Blake what does his daughter study at the university.
16. Can you be sure where will he be this Friday afternoon?
17. We should find out how hot is it in the summer before we decide to vacation there.
18. Can anyone explain why he had that terrible attitude?
19. We never found the village where were born our parents.
20. She does not know who did paint that beautiful mural.

### TAG QUESTIONS

**Exercise 80.** Finish these sentences by adding a tag questions with the correct form of the verb and the subject pronoun.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Tom won't be late, __?           | 11. There are a lot of people here, __? |
| 2. They were very angry, __?        | 12. Let's have dinner, __?              |
| 3. Ann is on holiday, __?           | 13. This isn't very interesting, __?    |
| 4. You weren't listening, __?       | 14. I'm too fat, __?                    |
| 6. Sue doesn't like onions, __?     | 15. You wouldn't tell anyone, __?       |
| 6. Jack's applied for the job, __?  | 16. Listen, __?                         |
| 7. You've got a camera, __?         | 17. I shouldn't have got angry, __?     |
| 8. You can type __?                 | 18. Don't drop it, __?                  |
| 9. He won't mind if I go early, __? | 19. They had to go home, __?            |
| 10. Tom could help you, __?         | 20. He'd never seen you before, __?     |

**Exercise 81.** Complete the following sentences with the correct tag question.

1. Acorns grow on oak trees, \_\_?
2. You don't mind if I watch television, \_\_?
3. Dylan Thomas was a Welsh poet, \_\_?
4. You will be home early tonight, \_\_?
5. I haven't much time to catch the train, \_\_?
6. I always meet you in the park, \_\_?
7. Let's all go to the zoo after lunch, \_\_?
8. You'd like cream in your coffee, \_\_?
9. Pass me the butter and the marmalade, \_\_?

10. I'm more relaxed since I take up yoga, \_\_\_?  
11. You'd better be careful with that sharp knife, \_\_\_?  
12. You and I both enjoy ballet, \_\_\_?

**Exercise 82. TEST.** Choose the correct answer.

1. Your brother will work at a laboratory, \_\_\_?  
(A) doesn't (B) won't (C) will he (D) is he
2. Choose the question: These scientists have completed their experiments.  
(A) What these scientists completed?  
(B) What have these scientists completed?  
(C) What have completed these scientists?  
(D) What these scientists have completed?
3. J. London is an American writer, \_\_\_?  
(A) is (B) does (C) isn't (D) doesn't
4. The English people often talk about the weather, \_\_\_?  
(A) didn't (B) don't (C) aren't (D) do
5. They learn German.  
(A) What language they learn?  
(B) What language did they learn?  
(C) What language do they learn?  
(D) What language learn they?
6. The car belongs to Michael.  
(A) Does the car belongs to Michael?  
(B) Do the car belongs to Michael?  
(C) Does the car belong to Michael?  
(D) Belongs the car to Michael?
7. The concert starts at 7, \_\_\_ it?  
(A) isn't (B) doesn't (C) is (D) does
8. She likes reading.  
(A) What she likes?  
(B) What does she likes?  
(C) What does she like?  
(D) What do she like?

9. It often rains in autumn.  
(A) It often rains in autumn?  
(B) Does it often rains in autumn?  
(C) Does it often rain in autumn?  
(D) Do it often rains in autumn?
10. She is married, \_\_\_?  
(A) does (B) isn't (C) is B. doesn't
- 11 .The sun shines brightly in summer.  
(A) The sun shines brightly in summer?  
(B) Is the sun shining brightly in summer?  
(C) Does the sun shine brightly in summer?  
(D) Does the sun shines brightly in summer?
12. Admiral Nelson was killed in the battle of Trafalgar, \_\_\_?  
(A) was (B) wasn't (C) did (D) didn't
13. She made two mistakes in the test.  
(A) How many mistakes she made in the test?  
(B) How many mistakes made she in the test?  
(C) How many mistakes did she make in the test?  
(D) How many mistakes did made she in the test?
14. She comes from Scotland.  
(A) Does she comes from Scotland?  
(B) Do she come from Scotland?  
(C) Does she come from Scotland?  
(D) She comes from Scotland?
15. It's your first time here, \_\_\_ it?  
(A) is (B) isn't (C) does (D) doesn't
16. The girl asked questions about everything she saw.  
(A) Did the girl ask questions about everything she saw?  
(B) Did the girl asked questions about everything she saw?  
(C) Does the girl ask questions about everything she saw?  
(D) Asked the girl questions about everything she saw?
17. Laws tell people what they must do and what they mustn't do.  
(A) What laws tell people?  
(B) What people tell laws?  
(C) What do people tell laws?  
(D) What do laws tell people?

18. She speaks English fluently?  
 (A) How does she speaks English?  
 (B) How she speaks English?  
 (C) How does she speak English?  
 (D) How do she speak English?
19. She knows three languages.  
 (A) How many languages she knows?  
 (B) How many languages does she knows?  
 (C) How many languages does she know?  
 (D) How many languages knows she?
20. She has never been abroad.  
 (A) Has she never been abroad?  
 (B) She has never been abroad?  
 (C) Has she ever been abroad?  
 (D) Hasn't she ever been abroad?
21. The postman will come in the afternoon, \_\_\_?  
 (A) will he (B) won't he (C) is he (D) does he
22. It often rained last summer.  
 (A) Did it often rained last summer?  
 (B) Does it often rain last summer?  
 (C) Did it often rain last summer?  
 (D) It often rained last summer?

## **14. NEGATION**

**Exercise 83.** Define whether the sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. There isn't no muscle in the body stronger than the tongue.
2. No insects have lungs.
3. Scarcely no train stations are larger than Grand Central Station in New York City.
4. I don't have nothing in my purse, so I don't care if it's stolen.
5. Jerry never visited no place he liked better than home, so he finally started staying home most of the time.
6. I don't think I should be expected to see a dog in a constellation made up of only two stars.

7. Exercise helps dieters lose fat, not muscle.
8. We will never accept no new production standards.
9. Many cats have hardly no tails.
10. He could not lend me \$5 because he did not have only \$3.
11. There were several of his friends at the restaurant, but none of mine came.
12. The rules required us to form an orderly line and to do not talk.
13. None of the shoes on sale fit me.
14. You are no going to finish the test in time.
15. Rarely does one see such a handsome man.

**Exercise 84.** Define whether the sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. He could not longer tolerate that situation.
2. There were not cheaper beds left at that furniture store.
3. The director told the chorus to sit down and not to whisper.
4. By the time I arrived, there was no birthday cake left.
5. He could not scarcely believe what I told him.
6. That couple has none children.
7. Do not go to the mountains without no sturdy hiking boots.
8. We were no interested in what they were selling.
9. No longer can the world afford to waste its natural resources.
10. He did not no good reason for hitting him.
11. If I were you I would no take that course.
12. The children could not hardly believe their eyes when they saw a giraffe for the first time.
13. They foolishly drove into the desert without any extra water.
14. There were none children in the playground.
15. He ran out of money and could no longer continue school.

## **15. AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE AGREEMENT**

**Exercise 85.** Use *So ...* or *Neither ...* in the following sentences.

Example: I'm feeling tired. — So am I.

I don't like eggs. — Neither do I.

1. I need a holiday.
2. I don't like milk.
3. I couldn't get up this morning.
4. I'd love a cup of tea.
5. I've never been to Africa.
6. I was ill yesterday.

7. I should smoke less.
8. I spent the whole evening watching television.
9. I didn't know that Ann was in hospital.

**Exercise 86.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. We are going to the concert, and so do they.
2. She hasn't finished the assignment yet, and neither I have.
3. He likes to travel, and so is she.
4. I didn't know the answer, and he didn't neither.
5. I am worried about it, and also is he.
6. If Jane won't go to the party, either will he.
7. Mary wants to go home, and so want we.
8. She is not in agreement, and neither do I.
9. She took pictures, and I did so.
10. He won't be here today, and either his sister will.
11. California relies heavily on income from fruit crops, and Florida is as well.
12. This table is not sturdy enough to support a television, and that one probably isn't neither.
13. Harvey seldom pays his bills on time, and his brother does too.
14. They are going to leave soon, and so do we.
15. They are planning on attending the convention next month, and so I am.
16. Pioneer men and women endured terrible hardships, and neither did the children.

## **16. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**

**Exercise 87.** Complete the sentences with the verb in the parentheses.

1. If I have enough apples, I (bake) an apple pie this afternoon.
2. If I had enough apples, I (bake) an apple pie this afternoon.
3. I will fix your bicycle if I (have) a screwdriver of the proper size.
4. I would fix your bicycle if I (have) a screwdriver of the proper size.
5. I (make) a tomato salad for the picnic tomorrow if the tomatoes in my garden are ripe.
6. I (make) a tomato salad for the picnic tomorrow if the tomatoes in my garden were ripe.
7. Jack would shave today if he (have) a sharp razor.
8. Jack will shave today if he (shave) a sharp razor.
9. Sally always answers the phone if she (be) in her office.
10. Sally would answer the phone if she (be) in her office right now.
11. I (not be) a student in this class if English (be) my native language.

**Exercise 88.** Complete the sentences with the verb in the parentheses.

1. If I (have) enough money, I will go with you.
2. If I (have) enough money, I would go with you.
3. If I (have) enough money, I would have gone with you.
4. If the weather is nice tomorrow, we (go) to the zoo.
5. If the weather were nice today, we (go) to the zoo.
6. If the weather had been nice today, we (go) to the zoo.
7. If Sally (be) at home tomorrow, I am going to visit her.
8. Jim isn't home right now. If he (be) at home right now, I (visit) him.
9. Linda wasn't at home yesterday. If she (be) at home yesterday, I (visit) her.
10. If I (be) were you, I would buy a new bicycle.
11. If my train (be) is late, I will take a taxi.
12. He would have been a doctor now, if he (had finished) his medical studies.
13. I could understand your friend from Italy if he (spoke) more slowly.
14. If you (went) to London, might see the Queen.
15. What would you do if you (lived) here all the time, as we do?

**Exercise 89.** Write a sentence with *if...*

Example: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.

— If you didn't live so far away, we'd visit you more often.

1. He doesn't speak very clearly - that's why people don't understand him.— If he \_\_\_, people \_\_\_.
2. That book is too expensive, so I'm not going to buy it. — If the book \_\_\_, I \_\_\_.
3. We don't go out very often because we can't afford it. — If we \_\_\_.
4. It's raining, so we can't have lunch in the garden. — If it \_\_\_.
5. I have to work tomorrow evening, so I can't meet you. — If I \_\_\_.
6. If you \_\_\_ a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (find)
7. I must hurry. My friend will be annoyed if I \_\_\_ on time. (not/be)
8. I didn't realise that Gary was in hospital. If I \_\_\_ he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (know)
9. If the phone \_\_\_, can you answer it? (ring)
10. I can't decide what to do. What would you do if you \_\_\_ in my position? (be)
11. If you \_\_\_ enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (have)
12. I'm glad we had a map. I'm sure we would have got lost if we \_\_\_ time. (not/have)
13. The accident was your fault. If you \_\_\_ more carefully, it wouldn't have happened.(drive)
14. I can't take much exercise because I don't have enough free time. If I \_\_\_.

**Exercise 90.** Fill the gaps in the sentences using the words given.

1. If I had more money, \_\_\_ (you/marry) me?
2. He wouldn't help you if \_\_\_ (he/not/like) you.
3. \_\_\_ (you/find) the machine is quite simple to operate if you look at the manual.
4. \_\_\_ (your parents/not/be) proud if they could see you now?
5. If \_\_\_ (I/not/revise) thoroughly, I may fail my test.
7. If you wanted to buy someone a really good present, what sort of thing \_\_\_ (you/look for)?
7. You'd have a lot more friends if \_\_\_ (you/not/be) so mean.
8. How \_\_\_ (you/feel) if you were in my position?
9. Would you change your job if \_\_\_ (you/can)?
10. If I \_\_\_ (not/ arrive), they wouldn't have known what to do.
11. If I \_\_\_ (lend) you this book, will you take great care of it?
12. If road travel \_\_\_ weren't (not/ be) cheaper than rail travel in this country, we wouldn't have so many traffic jams.
13. If we \_\_\_ (don't protect) wild life now, there will be nothing left for future generations.
14. If people \_\_\_ (had realised) that smoking was dangerous when they were young, they wouldn't be having serious health problems now.
15. If she \_\_\_ (hadn't failed) that exam, she wouldn't have met her future husband.

**Exercise 91.** Put the verb into the correct form.

Example: If I knew (know) her number, I would telephone her. I wouldn't buy (not buy) that coat if I were you.

1. I (give) you a cigarette if I had one but I'm afraid I haven't.
2. This soup would taste better if it (have) more salt in it.
3. If you (not go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn't be so tired all the time.
4. I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather (be) better.
5. I'd help you if I (can) but I'm afraid I can't.
6. If I were you, I (not marry) him.
7. We would happily buy that house if it (not be) so small.
8. If you (go) to bed earlier, you wouldn't be so sleepy in the morning.
9. She (lose) weight, if she ate fewer sweets.
10. If the meat (be) a little more done, this would be an excellent meal.
11. This apartment (be) perfect if it were a little larger.
12. If my daughter (be) here, I would be very happy.
13. If you (find) a job abroad, would you take it?
14. If I decided to apply, you (give) me a reference?
15. What would happen to car manufacturers if we all (ride) bicycles?

**Exercise 92.** Put the verb into the correct form.

Example: They would be rather offended if I didn't go to see them. (not/go)

1. If you took more exercise, you \_\_\_ better. (feel)
2. If I were offered a job, I think I \_\_\_ it. (take)
3. I'm sure Amy will lend you the money. I'd be very surprised if she \_\_\_. (refuse)
4. If I sold my car, I \_\_\_ much money for it. (not/get)
5. A lot of people would be out of work if the factory \_\_\_. (close down)
6. What would happen if I \_\_\_ that red button? (press)
7. Liz gave me this ring. She \_\_\_ very upset if I lost it. (be)
8. Mark and Carol are expecting us. They would be disappointed if we \_\_\_. (not/come)
9. Would Tim mind if I \_\_\_ his bicycle without asking him? (borrow)
10. If somebody \_\_\_ in here with a gun, I'd be very frightened. (walk)
11. I'm sure Sue \_\_\_ if you explained the situation to her. (understand)

**Exercise 93.** Put the verb into the correct form.

Example: If I knew his number, I would phone him. (know)

1. I \_\_\_ that coat if I were you. (not/buy)
2. I \_\_\_ you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't. (help)
3. We would need a car if we \_\_\_ in the country. (live)
4. If we had the choice, we \_\_\_ in the country. (live)
5. This soup isn't very good. It \_\_\_ better if it weren't so salty. (taste)
6. I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather \_\_\_ better. (be)
7. If I were you, I \_\_\_. (not/wait) I \_\_\_ now. (go)
8. You're always tired. If you \_\_\_ to bed so late every night, you wouldn't be tired all the time. (not/go)
9. I think there are too many cars. If there \_\_\_ so many cars (not/be), there \_\_\_ so much pollution. (not/be)

**Exercise 94.** Write a sentence with *if* for each situation.

Example: I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything. — If I'd been hungry, I would have eaten something.

1. The accident happened because the driver in front stopped so suddenly. —  
If the driver in front \_\_\_.
2. I didn't know that George had to get up early, so I didn't wake him up. — If I \_\_\_.
3. I was able to buy the car only because Jim lent me the money.
4. Margaret wasn't injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.

5. You didn't have any breakfast — that's why you're hungry now.
6. I didn't get a taxi because I didn't have any money on me.
7. I didn't know you were in hospital. If \_\_\_ (I/know), \_\_\_ (I/go) to visit you.
8. Ken got to the station in time to catch his train. If \_\_\_ (he/miss) it, \_\_\_ (he/be) late for his interview.
9. It's good that you remind me about Arm's birthday. \_\_\_ (I/forget) if \_\_\_ (you/not/remind) me.
10. Unfortunately, I didn't have my address book with me when I was in New York. If \_\_\_ (I/have) your address, \_\_\_ (I/send) you a postcard.
11. I took a taxi to the hotel but the traffic was very bad. \_\_\_ (It/be) quicker if \_\_\_ (I/walk).
12. I'm not tired. If \_\_\_ (I/be) tired, I'd go home now.
13. I wasn't tired last night. If \_\_\_ (I/be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

**Exercise 95.** Complete the sentences.

Example: Liz is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late.

— If Liz didn't go to bed so late, she wouldn't be tired all the time.

1. It's rather late. I don't think Ann will come to see us now. I'd be surprised if Ann \_\_\_.
2. I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy. If I'd known you were busy, I \_\_\_.
3. The dog attacked you, but only because you provoked it. If \_\_\_.
4. I don't want them to be upset, so I've decided not to tell them what happened. They \_\_\_ if \_\_\_.
5. Unfortunately, I didn't have an umbrella and so I got wet in the rain. I \_\_\_.
6. Martin failed his driving test last week. He was very nervous and that's why he failed. If he \_\_\_.

**Exercise 96.** Fill in the blanks a suitable word.

(A) will                      (B) won't                      (C) would                      (D) wouldn't

1. What \_\_\_ you do if you won lots of money?
2. If the students were studying, \_\_\_ you disturb them?
3. If you make so much noise, I \_\_\_ be able to sleep.
4. They \_\_\_ have to hurry or they \_\_\_ miss the train.
5. They \_\_\_ have missed the last bus if they had hurried.
6. If I were you, I \_\_\_ buy a new bicycle.
7. If she had locked all the doors, the burglars \_\_\_ have got in.
8. If my train is late, I \_\_\_ take a taxi.

9. He must build a strong boat, otherwise he \_\_\_ be able to sail round the world.
10. If you are a good girl, I \_\_\_ buy you some chocolate.
11. I \_\_\_ finish the work if you don't help me.
12. If only they \_\_\_ arrive on time.
13. You \_\_\_ understand unless you listen carefully.
14. If he hadn't cut his finger, it \_\_\_ have hurt for weeks.
15. I \_\_\_ gave you \$5 if you do me a favour.
16. If Chris didn't fall in love with Jane, he \_\_\_ give her flowers.

**Exercise 97.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. If he studied more, he would have been able to pass the exam.
2. He would have signed his name in the corner, if he painted that picture.
3. Ben would have studied medicine if he were admitted to a medical school.
4. If water freezes, it has become a solid.
5. If you put too much water in rice when you cook, it got sticky.
6. If Jim's family meet Karen, I am sure that they would like her.
7. If we had the money, we would have bought a new stereo system.
8. If Barbara was really my friend, she would call me once in a while.
9. If children be healthy, they learn to walk at about eighteen months old.
10. If they have a good sale, I would have stopped by on my way home.
11. If you made your bed in the morning, your room looks better when you got back in the afternoon.
12. If the neighbors hadn't quieted down, I would have have to call the police.
13. If Mr. Harris is single, I could introduce him to my sister.
14. If orange blossoms are exposed to very cold temperatures, they withered and died.
15. We will wait if you wanted to go.
16. If Judy didn't drink so much coffee, she wouldn't have been so nervous.

**Exercise 98.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. If he had not tried to jump over the stream, he would not break his leg.
2. If he would be taller, he would be a good basketball player.
3. If my apartment would be larger, I would not have to move.
4. If he was ready, we would begin the lesson.
5. If classes had finished sooner, I would have gone to Kanada last month.
6. If Betty would have driven more carefully, she would not have that accident.
7. If I will finish studying, I will go to the movies with you.
8. If the king had known the truth, he would have been very angry.
9. If Bob had practiced playing tennis more, he will not have lost the game.
10. If he had been here earlier, I would have saw him.

11. If I had seen him, I would have reminded him about his appointment.
12. If you will take a trip this summer, where will you go?
13. If Bob had received his check on time, he had certainly bought a new suit.
14. If she were the only person available, we would have to hire her.
15. If she had told me that she did not have enough money, I would pay for her trip last summer.

**Exercise 99.** Write sentence with *I wish ....*

Example: I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). I wish I knew more people.

1. I can't give up smoking (but I'd like to). I wish I \_\_\_\_.
2. I haven't any cigarettes (and I need one). I wish \_\_\_\_.
3. George isn't here (and I need him). I wish George \_\_\_\_.
4. It's cold (and I hate cold weather). I wish \_\_\_\_.
5. I live in London (and I hate London). I \_\_\_\_.
6. Tina can't come to the party (she's your best friend). I \_\_\_\_.
7. I have to work tomorrow (but I'd like to stay in bed). \_\_\_\_.
8. I don't know anything about cars (and my car has just broken down). \_\_\_\_.
9. I'm not lying on a beautiful sunny beach (and that's a pity). \_\_\_\_.
10. Annie doesn't know how to dance. She \_\_\_\_.
11. I don't have a key (and I need one). I wish \_\_\_\_.
12. Ann isn't here (and I need to see her).
13. I live in a big city (and I don't like it).
14. I can't go to the party (and I'd like to).

**Exercise 100.** Put the verbs in the parentheses into the correct form.

Example: I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much cake. (I/not/eat)

1. I'm fed up with this rain. I wish \_\_\_\_ raining. (it/stop)
2. It's a difficult question. I wish \_\_\_\_ the answer. (I/know)
3. I should have listened to you. I wish \_\_\_\_ your advice. (I/take)
4. I wish \_\_\_\_ here. She'd be able to help us. (Ann/be)
5. Aren't they ready yet? I wish \_\_\_\_ . (they/hurry up)
6. It would be nice to stay here. I wish \_\_\_\_ to go now. (we/not/have)
7. When we were in London last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see. I wish \_\_\_\_ more time. (we/have)
8. It's freezing today. I wish \_\_\_\_ so cold, I hate cold weather. (it/not/be)
9. What I said was stupid. I wish \_\_\_\_ anything. (I/not/say)
10. It was a terrible film. I wish \_\_\_\_ to see it. (we/not/go)
11. You're always tired. I wish \_\_\_\_ to bed so late. (you/not/go)
12. My brother is in California on vacation, but I wish he (to be) here so that he could help me repair my car.

**Exercise 101.** Write a sentence with *I wish ...* for each situation.

Example: You've eaten too much and now you feel sick. — I wish I hadn't eaten so much.

1. There was a job advertised in the newspaper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong.
2. When you were younger, you didn't learn to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
3. You've painted the gate red. Now you think it doesn't look very nice.
4. You are walking in the country. You would like to take some photographs but you didn't bring your camera.
5. You have some unexpected guests. They didn't tell you they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them. You say (to yourself): —.

**Exercise 102.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. I wish Sarah would be here now.
2. I wish you would listen to me.
3. I wish I would have more money.
4. I wish it wouldn't be so cold today.
5. I wish the weather would change.
6. I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.
7. I wish everything wouldn't be so expensive.
8. I wish that it was true.
9. Bill wishes that she were more interested in his work.
10. I wish that he were here.
11. Gary wishes that he wasn't working on Sunday.
12. She wishes that the trip is over.

**Exercise 103.** Complete each sentence using *as if*.

1. Brian is a terrible driver. He drives \_\_\_ the only driver on the road.
2. I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me \_\_\_ a child.
3. Steve has only met Nicola once but he talks about her \_\_\_ a close friend.
4. It was a long time ago that we first met but I remember it \_\_\_ yesterday.
5. Norman doesn't know everything, but he talks \_\_\_ everything .

6. I'm not a child, but sometimes you talk to me \_\_\_ a child.
7. She doesn't know me, so why did she smile at me \_\_\_ .
8. He's not my boss, but sometimes he acts \_\_\_ .
9. Josh is treated fairly but he felt \_\_\_ .
10. The Brownes are just as poor as we are, but they spend money \_\_\_ millionaires.
11. Sheila and Brendan aren't even engaged yet, but Sheila talks about Brendan \_\_\_ already married.

**Exercise 104.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE(T) or FALSE(F).Correct mistakes.

1. They wish they were able to spend more time in London.
2. My father wishes that he does not have to retire at sixty-five.
3. The farmer wished that he does not lose money on his cotton crop.
4. Abdulla wishes that his soccer team were the national champions.
5. The doctor wishes that he has more free time to play golf.
6. Each of her children wishes that he did not ignore the advice that she gave him.
7. I wish that I was earning more money and working less time.
8. My mother wishes that my father does more work around the house.
9. We wish that we did not have to go to the library this Saturday.
10. My friend Dorothy wishes she was still living in Paris.
11. Steven wishes that he has a bigger apartment.
12. Helen wishes that she did not live in a dormitory.
13. The actor wishes he was not required to perform every evening.
14. Ted wishes that he had not lost his job last month.
15. Bob wishes that he bought that house last spring.
16. I wish I was living in a warmer climate.

## **17. USED TO, BE USED TO + V -ing**

**Exercise 105.** Put the verb into the correct form:

***-ing or infinitive (I am used to doing or / used to do).***

Examples: Jane had to get used to driving on the left. (drive)

Bill used to be very fit. Now he's in terrible condition. (be)

1. When I was a child, I used to \_\_\_ swimming every day. (go)
2. It took me a long time to get used to \_\_\_ glasses. (wear)
3. There used to \_\_\_ a cinema on this corner but it was knocked down. (be)
4. I'm the boss. I'm not used to \_\_\_ told what to do. (be)
5. You'll have to get used to \_\_\_ less if you want to lose weight. (eat)

6. I used to \_\_\_ Ann but now she gets on my nerves. (like)
7. Ron got tired very quickly. He wasn't used to \_\_\_ so fast. (run)
8. Tom used to \_\_\_ a lot of coffee when he was a student. (drink)

**Exercise 106.** Add an appropriate form of *be* if necessary. If no form of *be* is necessary, leave the space blank.

1. I have lived in Malaysia for a long time. I \_\_\_ used to consistently warm weather.
2. I \_\_\_ used to live in Finland, but now I live in France.
3. I \_\_\_ used to sitting at this desk. I sit here every day.
4. I \_\_\_ used to sit in the back of the classroom, but now I prefer to sit in the front row.
5. When I was a child, I \_\_\_ used to play games with my friends in a big field near my house after school every day.
6. It's hard for my children to stay inside on a cold, rainy day. They \_\_\_ used to playing outside in a big field near our house. They play there almost every day.
7. A teacher \_\_\_ used to answering questions. Students, especially good students, always have a lot of questions.
8. People \_\_\_ used to believe the world was flat.
9. Mrs. Hansen \_\_\_ used to do all of the laundry and cooking for her family. Now children are older and Mrs. Hansen has gone back to teaching, so the whole family shares their household chores.
10. Trains \_\_\_ used to be the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.
11. Ms. Stanton's job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She \_\_\_ used to travelling by plane.
12. You and I are from different cultures. You \_\_\_ used to having fish for breakfast, I \_\_\_ used to having cheese and bread for breakfast.

**Exercise 107.** Complete the sentences using *used to*.

1. Somebody from Britain is thinking of going to live in your country. Warn him/her!  
— You would have to \_\_\_.
2. Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy. They'll have to \_\_\_.
3. Jack once went to the Middle East. It was very difficult for him at first because of the heat. He wasn't \_\_\_.
4. Sue moved from a big house to a smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to \_\_\_ in a much smaller house.
5. The children at school had a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her but this wasn't a problem for the children. The children soon \_\_\_.

**Exercise 108.** Rewrite the sentences using *used to* where possible.

1. Every summer Eileen stayed with her grandparents while her parents were away on holiday.
2. Bruce drove a new lorry to Scotland, stopping one night in the north of England.
3. My aunt had a dog which she had rescued from drowning when it was a puppy.
4. As Mary was getting out of the boat at her foot slipped and she fell into the river.
5. Before the new shopping mall was built, there was a football pitch here for the local children.
6. Jasper grumbled that bread didn't taste like cardboard until the supermarkets started making it.
7. During our voyage across the Atlantic I took several photos of the great seabirds which followed the ship, riding on currents in the air.
8. While I was waiting for the bus I noticed a group of tourists who were listening intently to a guide.
9. The punishments at our school were very harsh before the new head teacher was appointed.
10. As children we spent a lot of time helping with the household chores, but we didn't help in the garden.
11. The politicians made innumerable promises before the election, but kept none of them, as usual.

**Exercise 109.** Correct mistakes in the following sentences.

1. I used to was studying at the University of Southern California before I transferred here.
2. We use to go to the movies quite frequently.
3. She was used to get up early.
4. He was used to drink too much.
5. She used to speaking in public.
6. Janet is finally used to cook on an electric stove after having a gas one for so long.
7. Mr. Peters is used to think of himself as the only president of the company.
8. Mr. Anderson used to jogging in the morning during the winter months, but now he has stopped.
9. Are you used to sleep late at weekends?
10. She used to dancing every night, but now she is taking English.
11. There used to being a castle before the Romans came.
12. When I was younger I was used to swim long distances but now I'm out of practice.
13. As far as I know, you used to smoking a pipe, didn't you?
14. People used to thinking that the earth was flat.
15. I'm not used to play tennis so long.
16. It's difficult to understand Scottish people if you're not use to their accent.

17. They aren't used to hard working.
18. I've watched TV every night recently, I never used to doing it before.
19. We aren't use to a cold weather.
20. He always used to teasing his sister.

## **18. WOULD RATHER**

**Exercise 110.** Make sentences using *than* and *rather than*.

1. (get a taxi/walk home) I'd prefer \_\_\_\_.
2. (go for a swim/play tennis) I'd rather \_\_\_\_.
3. (wait for a few minutes/leave now) I'd rather \_\_\_\_.
4. (eat at home/go to a restaurant) I'd prefer \_\_\_\_.
5. (think about it for a while/decide now) I'd rather \_\_\_\_.
6. (read a book/watch television) I'd rather \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 111.** Complete the sentences using *would you rather I... .*

1. Are you going to cook the dinner or \_\_\_\_?
2. Are you going to tell Ann what happened or would you rather \_\_\_\_?
3. Are you going to do the shopping or \_\_\_\_?
4. Are you going to answer the phone or \_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 112.** Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form.

1. She told me that she'd rather (not/to serve) on the committee.
2. If you don't mind, I'd rather (not/to go).
3. He said that he'd rather (to go) to a small college instead of to a large university.
4. I'd rather (to write) this than print it because I don't print well.
5. Greg would rather (to have) a Pepsi than a beer.
6. I'd rather that you (not/to do) that.
7. Diane would rather that her husband (not/to work) so hard.
8. The dean would rather that students (to make) appointments instead of dropping by.
9. My roommate would rather that I (not/to keep) the light in after ten o'clock.
10. We'd rather that you (to come) tomorrow.

**Exercise 113.** Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Do you want me to go now or would you rather I \_\_\_ (to stay) here?
2. Shall I tell Ann the news? — No, I'd rather she \_\_\_ (do/not) know.
3. Do you want to go out this evening or would you rather \_\_\_ (to stay) at home?
4. This is a private letter addressed to me. I'd rather you \_\_\_ (do/not) read it.
5. It's quite a nice house but I'd rather it \_\_\_ (to be) a bit bigger.
6. Do you mind if I turn on the radio? — I'd rather you \_\_\_ (do/not). I'm trying to study.

## **19. MODALS**

**Exercise 114.** Make sentences from the words in brackets.

Example: Don't phone Ann now. (she might/have lunch) — She might be having lunch.

1. I ate too much. Now I feel sick. (I shouldn't /eat so much)
2. I wonder why Tom didn't call me. (he must/forget)
3. Why did you go home so early? (you needn't/go home so early)
4. You've signed the contract. (it/can't/change now)
5. What's Linda doing? — I'm not sure. (she may/watch television)
6. Ann was standing outside the cinema. (she must/wait for somebody)
7. He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed, so. (he couldn't/do it)
8. Why weren't you here earlier? (you ought/be here earlier)
9. Why didn't you ask me to help you? (I would/help you)
10. I'm surprised nobody told you that the road was very dangerous. (you should warn)
11. George was in a strange mood yesterday. (he might not/feel very well)

**Exercise 115.** Choose the correct form of the verbs.

1. You \_\_\_ very proud of your son winning so many prizes.  
(A) must be      (B) can't be
2. We thought our cousins would visit us when they were in town last week, but they didn't even call. I suppose they \_\_\_ too busy.  
(A) must be      (B) must have been

3. The film has been such a big success I guess it \_\_\_ easy to get tickets to see it.  
(A) must be (B) can't be
4. I'm sure you could mend this if you really tried. You \_\_\_ using the right tools.  
(A) must be (B) can't be
5. I've just called the garage to check whether they've fixed my car, but I can't get an answer. I suppose they \_\_\_ a tea-break out in the yard.  
(A) may have (B) may be having
6. I don't know why you wanted to stay at that party. You \_\_\_ talking to all those boring people.  
(A) might have enjoyed (B) can't have enjoyed
7. I can't go out this morning. We're getting a new sofa and the store \_\_\_ it today.  
(A) may be delivering (B) must be delivering
8. You'll have to check these figures again. They're not accurate. You \_\_\_ when you added them up.  
(A) might have been concentrating (B) can't have been concentrating
9. You \_\_\_ thirsty after carrying those heavy boxes. Shall I make some tea?  
(A) must be (B) must have been

**Exercise 116.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE(T) or FALSE(F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. My brother has to walk ten miles to buy some gas last weekend.
2. There is no one outside the theater; the performance have been cancelled.
3. They must to sign up for that class by this Friday.
4. We would have went to Florida, but it was having an unusual cold spell.
5. Mrs. Jones told me that she might have baked a cake for my birthday tomorrow if she has time.
6. Susan said she might leave before dinner.
7. They might go to the store a few minutes ago.
8. When my baby got very ill, I must have called the doctor.
9. The boys should not had made so much noise.
10. I will be very happy when I graduate this year.
11. John said that he might have gone to Harvard next year.
12. Beth must to take the bus yesterday because her car was being repaired.

## **20. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS**

**Exercise 117.** Choose the correct word in the parentheses.

1. George is a (careless / carelessly) writer. He writes (careless / carelessly).
2. Frank asked me an (easy / easily) question. I answered it (easy / easily).
3. Sally speaks (soft / softly). She has a (soft / softly) voice.
4. I entered the classroom (quiet / quietly) because I was late.
5. Ali speaks English very (good / well). He has very (good / well) pronunciation.
6. This math problem looks (easy / easily). I'm sure I can do it (easy / easily).
7. That chair looks (comfortable / comfortably).
8. I looked at the problem (careful / carefully) and then solved it.
9. I felt (sad / sadly) when I heard the news.
10. Susan smiled (cheerful / cheerfully). She seemed (cheerful / cheerfully).
11. I tasted the soup (careful / carefully) because it was hot. The soup tasted (good / well).
12. The room got (quiet / quietly) when the professor entered. The students sat (quiet / quietly) at their desks.
13. The sky grew (dark / darkly) as the storm approached.

**Exercise 118.** Decide whether the underlined words are right (R) or wrong (W).  
Correct those which are wrong.

1. Give my best wishes to your parents. I hope they are well.
2. The children behaved themselves very good.
3. I tried hardly to remember his name but I couldn't.
4. The company's financial situation is not well at present.
5. Jack has started his own business. Everything is going quite good.
6. Don't walk so fast. Can't you walk more slowly?
7. See you soon! Don't work too hard.

**Exercise 119.** Choose the right word, *an adjective or an adverb*.

1. Please, shut the door (quiet / quietly).
2. Can you be (quiet / quietly), please?
3. This soup tastes (nice / nicely).
4. Tom cooks very (good / well).
5. Don't go up that ladder. It doesn't look (safe / safely).
6. We were relieved that he arrived (safe / safely) after his long journey.

7. Do you feel (nervous / nervously) before examination?
8. Hurry up! You're always so (slow / slowly).
9. He looked at me (angry / angrily) when I interrupted him.

**Exercise 120.** Decide whether to use *an adjective* or *an adverb* in each of the following sentences.

1. Martha performed (good/well) on the exam.
2. The car moves (quick/quickly).
3. The ground was (firm/firmly) after the night's frost.
4. Paul scored the test (accurate/accurately).
5. The winner of the contest is certainly (beautiful/beautifully).
6. My new car runs so (smooth/smoothly).
7. The color of my house is (bright/brightly) yellow.
8. That old computer runs so (slow/slowly).
9. After going to the dance, Mary was (real/really) tired.
10. That meal was (delicious/deliciously).
11. Floods cause millions of dollars worth of property damage (annual/annually).
12. Writer Ernest Hemingway is known for his (simple/simply) language and his lively dialogue.
13. Skyscrapers developed (simultaneous/simultaneously) in Chicago and New York City.
14. The endocrine system functions in (close/closely) relationship with the nervous system.
15. Mushrooms are found in an (incredible/incredibly) range of sizes, colors and shapes.
16. Opera singer Maria Callas was known for her (intense/intensely) powerful voice.

**Exercise 121.** Define whether sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. The bus arrived lately, so I missed my first class.
2. We did not pass the test, but we certainly tried hard.
3. The train left at exactly 5:00 P.M.
4. When Ms. Smith went to Germany, she bought an exquisitely carved vase.
5. They had a real good chance of winning the national competition.
6. Computers process data efficiently.
7. We worked hard and saved enough money to take a trip.
8. There was a hasty called meeting to discuss the bus strike.
9. He was thorough interested in the subject.
10. That dress fits her perfectly.

- 11 .She likes her students to arrive prompt for class.
12. We studied really hard for the test.
13. He was bright and attractive.
- 14.The child ran fastly to get to school.
15. He wrote his paper really good.
- 16.The careful organized tour of the city was a huge success.
- 17.You cannot possibly imagine how embarrassed I was yesterday.
18. Although he plays soccer well, he plays tennis bad.
19. I read an interestingly written report.
20. The time went by very fastly on our vacation.

**Exercise 122.** Rewrite each sentence beginning with the words given.

1. Ursula is a very quick learner. — Ursula learns very quickly.
2. Richard can cook really well. — Richard is a \_\_\_ .
3. Your behaviour was extremely foolish. — You behaved \_\_\_ .
4. The hotel staff treated us in a very friendly manner. — The hotel staff were \_\_\_ .
5. I don't think that's a practical suggestion. — That suggestion doesn't sound \_\_\_ .
6. Philippa is usually a hard worker. — Philippa usually works \_\_\_ .
7. Have the children been good today? — Have the children behaved \_\_\_ ?
8. I wish you could swim fast. — I wish you were \_\_\_ .

**Exercise 123.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. "Please get a move on!" shouted Trevor impatient.
2. I believe she is a very lonely woman.
3. I didn't like his plan, which seemed unnecessary complicated to me.
4. I'm sure you could win the match if you tried hardly.
5. I have an awful headache, so could you please be quiet.
6. Soraya's only been in France a year, but she speaks perfectly French.
7. The reason Bruce gets so tired is that he has an exceptional demanding job.
8. My mother was very ill last year, but she's good enough to go on holiday now.
9. David ran as fast as he could but he still arrived late.
10. In spite of the fact that Jean always says she's short of money, I happen to know she actually has a very good-paid job.
11. A barracudas' teeth are awful large and knifelike.
12. This fall's television shows are surely interesting.
13. Jefferson did good in the state-wide art contest held last spring.
14. I ran bad in my first race, but in the second race I did much better.

15. The ginger ice cream tasted good.
16. Daphne scored perfect on the mathematics section of her college entrance examination.

## **21. LINKING VERBS**

**Exercise 124.** Identify the linking verbs in the sentences below.

1. Tile floors are easy to clean.
2. The sound of the wind chimes always seems soothing.
3. Elyse looks wonderful in her polka-dotted tennis dress.
4. My favorite snack is oatmeal cookies with walnuts and chocolate chips.
5. Jane's steering wheel feels hot.
6. None of the clocks in the house was right.
7. Julia Child was the host of the first how-to show on television.
8. Very low-calorie diets seem risky.
9. Thomas appeared tired after the debate.
10. Which breakfast cereals are most nutritious?
11. These flowers smell sweet.
12. He looks handsome in black.
13. That loud music sounds bad to me.

**Exercise 125.** Correct mistakes in the following sentences.

1. We love to go to the country in the spring because the wild flowers smell so sweetly.
2. Although the medicine tastes bad, it seems to help my condition.
3. The meal tasted well.
4. The music sounds sweetly and soothing.
5. When he complained that the food tasted badly, the waiter took it back to the kitchen and brought him something else.
10. It is impossible to view Picasso's Guernica without feeling bad about the fate of the people portrayed.
7. I felt sadly when I read the letter.
8. That gossip sounds malicious.
9. The wine tastes awfully, like vinegar.
10. The girls look adorable in their party costumes.
11. Our neighbor's music sounded loudly last night.
12. Laurie seemed quiet after she read her friends letter.
13. The roses and lilacs smell nicely every spring.

14. Do not drink that milk, it tastes sourly.
15. My sister has always looked heavy because she has broad shoulders.
16. He appeared nervously as he began to take the exam.

## **22. COMPARISONS**

**Exercise 126.** Complete these sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in parentheses.

1. The less he works, (happy) he is.
2. The bigger the car, (fast) you can go.
3. (fresh) it is, (good) it will taste.
4. (more) you eat, (fat) you will get.
5. (less) you spend, (more) you save.
6. It was becoming (cold) and (cold).
7. I was getting more and (excited).
8. The weather was bad and getting (bad) and (bad).

**Exercise 127.** Choose the correct comparison word in the following sentences.

1. Of the twenty applicants, Athena is the (better/best) qualified.
2. Of the two dogs, Rover is the (better/best).
3. I am the (elder/eldest) of my five sisters.
4. I am (elder/eldest) than my brother.
5. (Among/Between) the two countries, they should be able to raise the money for aid.
6. Of all the speeches I heard, his was the (more/most) compelling.
7. After returning from our vacation, I was (happier/happiest) to be home.
8. (Among/Between) the three independent candidates, only he seemed qualified.
9. It was certainly the (less/least) of the two evils.
10. She was the (shorter/shortest) member of the graduating class.

**Exercise 128.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. This book is more better than that one.
2. This year's prices will certainly be much higher as last year's prices.
3. Since there were two possible ways to get to New York, we had to decide which one was better.
4. The customs in this country are more traditional than those in the United States.

5. Her letter was more friendlier than this.
6. She was happier than anybody in her family.
7. Nancy was luckier than Fred in Las Vegas.
8. Betty's homework is usually more organized than that of any other students in the class.
9. The weather was much hotter this year than in 1970.
10. The final exam was more difficult than the mid-semester exam.
11. The first performance was more crowded as the second one.
12. The new student reads faster than anyone else in the class.
13. Fred's project proposal was much more economical than Brad's.
14. Robert's new home is more expensive than any house in the neighborhood.
15. Henry had a rather bad accident, and it was a miracle that he was not hurt more worse than he was.

**Exercise 129.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. They were the most poorest people I had ever seen.
2. West Germany is one of the most highly industrialized nations in the world.
3. When he won the contest, he was the most surprised person than the other contestants.
4. I went to Belgium, Holland, and England last year, and I liked Belgium better.
5. Is the Sahara the largest desert in the world?
6. August is the hottest and most humid month of the year.
7. It was the most biggest building I had ever seen.
8. That company sold the most sophisticated computer equipment that we had ever found.
9. Dr. Henderson was the most thorough doctor than Jane ever known.
10. John, Phyllis, and Mary were all saving money to go to Egypt, and John saved the most.
11. Paula, Susie, and Jill bought new homes, but Paula's was more elegant.
12. Peking is most densely populated city in the world.
13. The damage caused by the hurricane was the worst than had ever occurred in that state.
14. She bought a new color television, a stereo unit, and an AM/FM radio and the television was the most expensive.
15. Mary is the fastest runner than the other team members.
16. You can use any of those three pens, but the red one is the best for marking on heavy material.
17. That place serves the gooddest ice cream in town.

18. Dr. Jones was certainly among the smartest men I had ever known.
19. He got the baddest grade he had ever received on an exam.
20. The crimes committed by that murderer were the most heinous in the history of that town.

**Exercise 130.** Correct the following sentences.

1. Bob was the biggest of the twins.
2. You wouldn't meet a more kinder lady.
3. The patient made the wonderfulest recovery.
4. Mary was as old like Jane.
5. Who is the tallest, Jack or Betty?
6. The more bright students do not always do well in tests.
7. The noise in Rome is far worst than in Florence.
8. I am not as rich as he.
9. She has more time than me.
10. We are stronger than they.
11. They are more ignorant than us.
12. He does not like I as much as her.
13. He is not as fast as she.
14. You speak English better than he.
15. She loved him more than I.

**Exercise 131.** Correct the following sentences.

1. He arrived more late than his boss.
2. Instead of slowing down, he drove more fastly.
3. He did this test easily than the one before.
4. She drives worst than I on the freeway.
5. Try and come more early tomorrow.
6. He ran quicker than all the others.
7. Peter works most hard of all.
8. He did very bad in the examination.
9. I would like to go to the school as the one my sister goes to.
10. Your apartment is the same size to mine.
11. That garden is as beautiful like the one in the park.
12. She looks as her mother.
13. This blouse is the same expensive as that one.
14. He is as intelligent than his brother.
15. Tom's suit is the same style that Bob's.
16. Your shoes are the same color like mine.

**Exercise 132.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. Worsted fabrics are more smother than ordinary wool cloth.
2. The best surfing beaches face west.
3. Please take the biggest of these two pieces of pie.
4. Our representative made the list of the most obscure members of Congress.
5. Hydrogen is the most abundant of all the elements in the sun.
6. Of all the written records people have made, the earlier are accounts of financial transactions.
7. Michael and Ralph both talk a great deal, but Ralph is the most talkative of the two.
8. Nanette is the most unusual person I have ever known.
9. Margot and Keith both did well on the driving test, but Keith got the higher score.
10. In this suit I feel as if I could win an award for a worse-dressed person of the year.
11. Of the twins, Len weights most and is tallest.

**Exercise 133.** Identify the ONE underlined word or phrase A or B that should be corrected or rewritten. Time: 5 minutes.

1. California, with a population of more than 23 million, is the more (A) populous (B) state in America.
2. The gorilla is much (A) in danger of extinction as is (B) the giant tortoise.
3. Which plant is (A) the hardier (B) to survive a long, dry summer: the ivy, the fern or the cactus?
4. The Empire State Building, though not as high (A), is elder than (B) the World Trade Center in New York.
5. In man, yellow-blue color blindness is (A) less common as (B) red-green color blindness.
6. The family-sized farm is no longer economically competitive (A) like (B) it was in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.
7. The area of the United States is divided into 50 states, of which the largest (A) is Alaska and the most small (B) is Rhode Island.
8. Predators are lesser (A) of a danger than (B) farmers think.
9. The high (A) the rate of inflation, the higher (B) the price of commodities.
10. Los Angeles and San Francisco are two of the more (A) visited cities (B) on the West Coast.
11. Not as many (A) children read books as a recreational activity than they (B) used to.
12. Drugs sold over the counter are much more better (A) packaged now than (B) they used to be.
13. The electron microscope is a newer (A) and far complexer (B) research tool than the light microscope, magnifying cells up to 200, 000 times.

14. Some animals need more highlier (A) developed sense cells than man (B) to survive in their struggle for existence.
15. Lesser (A) than a decade (B) after the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, San Francisco was ruined by an earthquake.
16. The first settlers planted corn, ate pumpkins and squash like (A) the American (B) Indians did.
17. Computers, a fastly growing (A) industry, are effecting the everyday lives of most people (B) in industrialized countries.
18. General Grant was not an aristocrat like General Lee (A) and did not have the privileges like (B) Lee had in his life.
19. The yield of grain from a hectare of corn is several times high (A) as that from (B) a hectare of wheat.
20. The sequoia trees, some of which are more than 3, 000 years old, are among the largest (A) and old trees (B) in the world.

### **23. NOUNS FUNCTIONING AS ADJECTIVES**

**Exercise 134.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Tom drove past the police's station on his work to work.
2. Joan Sutherland is my favorite opera singer.
3. I need to have my car's license renewed.
4. During the power shortage, the streets lights went out.
5. He wanted to take an economic class.
6. Many people are worried about the current world's situation.
7. The news reporter was at the scene of the accident.
8. Phyllis and Julie put up the party decorations.
9. Three footballs teams were tired for first place.
10. Mike is the new mathematics professor.
11. We need some paper napkins for the picnic.
12. The students did not like the dormitory's rules.
13. The marble floor felt like ice.
14. The television's repairman picked up my television set this morning.
15. I went to three dances recitals last year.
16. John bought some leather gloves yesterday.
17. I need to buy a plane's ticket.
18. He took many languages courses when was in New York.
19. She put a new table lamp in her living room.
20. He is taking an advanced physic course this semester.

## **24. HYPHENATED ADJECTIVES**

**Exercise 135.** Change the following phrases into two word combinations.

Example: a car which has four doors = a four-door car

a person who dances ballet = a ballet-dancer

1. A play which has three acts.
2. A building which has thirty stories.
3. A telephone call which lasts three minutes.
4. A composition which contains five hundred words.
5. A teacher who teaches English.
6. A store which sells shoes.
7. A bill which is worth twenty dollars.
8. A student who studies science.
9. A can that holds five litres.
10. A plug that has three pins.
11. A note that is worth \$20.
12. A course that lasts three weeks.
13. A family with two cars.
14. A filing cabinet with three drawers.
15. An omelet made with two eggs.
16. A film that lasts two hours.

**Exercise 136.** Use the underlined noun or noun phrase in the first sentence as the modifier in the second sentence.

Example: My garden has flowers in it. It is a flower garden.

1. That handbook is for students. It is \_\_\_\_.
2. Their baby is ten months old. They have \_\_\_\_.
3. Our trip lasted for three days. We took \_\_\_\_.
4. She is a psychologist for children. She is \_\_\_\_.
5. I wrote a check for fifty dollars. I wrote \_\_\_\_.
6. I will get three credits for that course. It is \_\_\_\_.
7. Their house has nine rooms. It is \_\_\_\_.
8. That food is for dogs. It is \_\_\_\_.
9. That room is for guests. It is \_\_\_\_.
10. The professor asked us to write a paper of five pages. She asked us to write \_\_\_\_.
11. I have a sister who is ten years old and a brother who is twelve years old.  
I have \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 137.** Complete the sentences according to the examples.

Example: Our holiday lasted three weeks. It was a three-week holiday. The girls were 14 years old. They were 14-year-old girls.

1. The woman was 27. She was a \_\_\_\_.
2. The flight lasted for three hours. It was a \_\_\_\_.
3. The strike lasted four days. It was a \_\_\_\_.
4. The book has 200 pages. It is a \_\_\_\_.
5. The boys were ten years old. They were \_\_\_\_.
6. The television series has ten parts. It is \_\_\_\_.
7. The bottle holds two litres. It is \_\_\_\_.
8. Each of the tickets cost ten pounds. They were \_\_\_\_.
9. The building has ten stories. It is \_\_\_\_.
10. This bag of potatoes weights five kilos. It is \_\_\_\_.
11. We walked for five miles. It was \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 138.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. I lived in a two-hundred-years-old house in Rome.
2. He bought a three-hundred-dollars suit.
3. The teacher told us to read the five-hundred-page book.
4. I have four fifty-minutes classes every day.
5. She has just bought a new four-door Ford.
6. We signed up for a three-hour lab.
7. The police suspected a thirty-years-old man.
8. My mother bought some five-dollars-a-pound cheese.
9. John got a ten-speed bicycle for his birthday.
10. I visited the five-thousand-years-old pyramids in Egypt last summer.
11. John and Sue brought me a two-ounces bottle of French perfume.
12. My parents are going on a four-week European tour next month.
13. Most ten-month-old babies cannot walk.
14. They are studying the five-hundred-pages manual.
15. The Smiths have just purchased a ten-rooms house.

## **25. ENOUGH WITH ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS AND NOUNS**

**Exercise 139.** Complete these sentences using *enough* with one of the following words:

<b>big</b>	<b>old</b>	<b>warm</b>	<b>well</b>	<b>cups</b>
<b>money</b>	<b>room</b>	<b>time</b>	<b>qualifications</b>	

Example: She can't get married yet. She's not old enough.

1. Tom would like to buy a car but he hasn't got \_\_\_\_.
2. I couldn't make coffee for everybody. There weren't \_\_\_\_.
3. Are you \_\_\_\_? Or shall I switch on the heating?
4. It's only a small car. There isn't \_\_\_\_ for all of you.
5. George didn't feel \_\_\_\_ to go to work this morning.
6. I didn't finish the examination. I didn't have \_\_\_\_.
7. Do you think I've got \_\_\_\_ to apply for the job?
8. Try this jacket and see if it's \_\_\_\_ for you.

**Exercise 140.** In the following sentences choose the correct form in parentheses.

1. It's not (enough warm/warm enough) to sit in the garden.
2. I haven't got (enough money/money enough) to go on holiday this year.
3. He doesn't speak (English enough/enough English) to make himself understood.
4. This coat is not (enough warm/warm enough) for me to wear in winter.
5. That chair isn't (strong enough/enough strong) for you to stand on.
6. This bed is not (enough wide/wide enough) for two people to sleep in.
7. I don't have (enough time/time enough) to do it.
8. He didn't run (fast enough/enough fast).
9. Is this coffee (enough strong/strong enough) for you?
10. He is not (old enough/enough old) to get a driver's license.
11. Do we have (enough drinks/drinks enough) for the party?
12. The director thought the man was not (heavy enough/enough heavy) for the role.
13. There were not (enough people/people enough) to form a dance group.
14. Are there (chairs enough/enough chairs) in the room?

**Exercise 141.** Correct mistakes in the following sentences.

1. I need to buy a lamp because I don't have enough the light in my room.
2. Her little car isn't big enough as to seat more than two people comfortably.
3. Virginia doesn't have the enough information to make a decision.
4. That excuse isn't enough good.
5. Do we have hamburgers enough as for the party?
6. He should be as strong enough to get out of bed in a few days.
7. Without enough the sleep, you won't be able to do well on the examination.

8. Billy isn't enough old to enlist in the army.
9. There aren't enough car for all of us to go.
10. His score on the exam was enough good to qualify him for a graduate program.
11. When your body does not get enough the food, it cannot make the glucose it needs.
12. His English was enough good as for him to pass the TOEFL.
13. We had time enough to finish our work.

**Exercise 142.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Pay attention to the meanings *of too, very and enough*:

<i>Very</i>	means	<i>"to a high degree"</i>
<i>Too</i>	suggests	<i>"impossibility or undesirable degree"</i>
<i>Enough</i>	suggests	<i>"possibility or sufficient degree"</i>

1. I had enough experience to get the job.
2. This soap is too good.
3. It was too late to go to the theater.
4. He is enough intelligent to do well in school.
5. Paul had very much money to buy a new motorcycle.
6. I am very disappointed in his behavior.
7. He made too many good friends when he studied abroad.
8. She spoke French well enough to be a translator.
9. He did not speak English as well enough to be understood.
10. The envelope was thin enough to slide under the door.
11. The sofa was big enough as to seat four people comfortably.
12. This paragraph is not enough good as to be acceptable.
13. His TOEFL score was high enough to be accepted.
14. She was too happy when she heard the news.
15. She was enough old to get married.

## **26. CAUSE CONNECTORS: BECAUSE/BECAUSE OF; SO/SUCH**

**Exercise 143.** Supply either **because** or **because of** as appropriate.

1. We arrived late \_\_\_ the bad traffic.
2. He could not play in the game \_\_\_ his foot injury.
3. She did not buy it \_\_\_ the price was too high.
4. \_\_\_ it is a national holiday, there will be no class tomorrow.
5. We could not sleep last night \_\_\_ the noise next door.

6. \_\_\_ the storm warnings, we did not go out last night.
7. They went to the beach \_\_\_ it is cooler there.
8. She had to study \_\_\_ her exam next week.
9. Classes will be canceled tomorrow \_\_\_ a national holiday.
10. She was absent \_\_\_ her cold was worse.
11. John's family is very happy \_\_\_ his being awarded a scholarship.
12. She didn't buy it \_\_\_ the price.
13. It was difficult to see the road clearly \_\_\_ it was raining.
14. \_\_\_ cheese is essentially a concentrated form of milk, it contains the same nutrients as milk.

**Exercise 144.** Supply either *because* or *because of* as appropriate.

1. We were late to the meeting \_\_\_ the traffic was heavy.
2. \_\_\_ my parents' generosity, all of the children in our family have received the best of everything.
3. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning \_\_\_ his wife's illness.
4. \_\_\_ Dr. Robinson's excellent research on wolves, we know much more today about the endangered species than we did even five years ago.
5. I couldn't get to sleep last night \_\_\_ it was noisy in the next apartment.
6. I regret to say that I cannot be present at our daughter's wedding \_\_\_ circumstances are beyond my control.
7. Jerry's in good shape physically \_\_\_ he gets a lot of exercises.
8. The letter was returned to the sender \_\_\_ it didn't have enough postage.
9. Our flight from Amsterdam to London was delayed \_\_\_ the heavy fog.
10. \_\_\_ the severe snow storm and the road blocks, the air force dropped food and medical supplies close to the city.
11. He has received several scholarships \_\_\_ his academic and artistic ability.
12. The professor was considering postponing the examination until the following week \_\_\_ the student's confusion.
13. \_\_\_ the residents had worked so diligently to renovate the old building, the manager had a party.
14. George did not do well in the class \_\_\_ he failed to study properly.
15. \_\_\_ its durability and economy, the best car is a Mercedes Benz.

**Exercise 145.** Combine the following sentences by using *so ... that* or *such ... that*.

Examples: This tea is good, I think I'll have another cup. — This tea is so good that I think I'll have another cup.

This is good tea. I think I'll have another cup. — This is such good tea that I think I'll have another cup.

1. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.
2. It was an expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.
3. I had to wear my wool coat. It was a cold day.
4. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
5. I don't like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.
6. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me. I couldn't breathe for a moment.
7. I couldn't understand her. She talked too fast.
8. The audience booed the actors. It was a bad performance.
9. I've met too many people in the last few days. I can't possibly remember all of their names.
10. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.
11. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled.
12. The newspaper basket overflowed. Sally used too much paper when she was writing her report.

**Exercise 146.** Put in "*so*" or "*such*".

1. Come on! Don't walk \_\_\_ slowly.
2. I've never read \_\_\_ a stupid book.
3. I was surprised that he looked \_\_\_ well after his recent illness.
4. They've got \_\_\_ a lot of money, they don't know what to do with it.
5. She is a very attractive girl. She's got \_\_\_ beautiful eyes.
6. Everything is \_\_\_ expensive these days, isn't it?
7. Why do you ask them \_\_\_ stupid questions?
8. It was \_\_\_ a boring film that I fell asleep in the middle of it.
9. The wind was \_\_\_ strong, it was difficult to work.
10. The food at the hotel was very bad. I've never eaten \_\_\_ awful food.
11. It was \_\_\_ a good book that I couldn't put it down.
12. There were \_\_\_ many people in the room that we couldn't move.
13. It was \_\_\_ warm weather that I didn't need a coat.

**Exercise 147.** Use *such* instead of *so*.

Example: The book was so good that I couldn't put it down. — It was such a good book that I couldn't put it down.

1. The road is so narrow that it is difficult for two cars to pass each other. — It is \_\_\_.
2. The weather was so warm that I didn't need a coat. — It \_\_\_.
3. His feet are so big that he has difficulty finding shoes to fit him. — He has got \_\_\_.
4. There were so many people in the room that we couldn't move. — There were \_\_\_.

**Exercise 148.** Put in *so*, *such* or *such a*.

1. He's difficult to understand because he speaks \_\_\_ quickly.
2. I like Tom and Ann. They're \_\_\_ nice people.
3. It was a great holiday. We had \_\_\_ good time.
4. The weather is lovely, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be \_\_\_ nice day.
5. I have to go. I didn't realize it was \_\_\_ late.
6. He always looks good. He wears \_\_\_ nice clothes.
7. I couldn't believe the news. It was \_\_\_ shock.
8. I think she works too hard. She looks \_\_\_ tired all the time.
9. I didn't realize you lived \_\_\_ long way from the downtown.
10. I can't decide what to do. It's \_\_\_ problem.
11. Today was \_\_\_ beautiful day that I couldn't bring myself to complete all my chores.
12. The chemistry instructor explained the experiment in \_\_\_ way that it was easily understood.

**Exercise 149.** Correct mistakes in the following sentences.

1. He is so slow as he never gets to class on time.
2. It was so interesting book that I couldn't put it down.
3. The suitcase is as heavy that I can hardly carry it.
4. She is such nice girl that everyone likes her.
5. We arrived so late as Professor Baker had already called the roll.
6. We had so a small lunch that I am hungry already.
7. He drives so fast as no one likes to ride with him.
8. That so many advances have been made in so short time is the most valid argument for retaining the research unit.
9. Preparing frozen foods is too easy that anyone can do it.
10. It is so nice weather that I would like to go to the beach.

**Exercise 150.** Define whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. They had so a good meal at that restaurant that they wanted to go there again.
2. They were such talented actors that their movie was a great success.
3. The store had too few customers that it closed.
4. It was such a long lesson that we could not finish it in one day.
5. He was as rich that he owned four homes.
6. He is so forgetful as he never pays his rent on time.
7. She was such a good student that she won a scholarship.
8. They had a such bad day that got depressed.
9. It was so warm weather that we went to the swimming pool.
10. The old woman's handwriting was so faint that I could hardly read it.

11. The stars are so far from the earth that we cannot see most of them.
12. I had too many things to do that I could not finish them all.
13. It was so confusing as I could not understand it.
14. He spoke such good Arabic that he surprised everyone.
15. The building was as large that we had difficulty finding his office.
16. He gave me so good advice that I was very grateful to him.
17. They had such a good time in Rome that they always dreamed of going back.
18. He is so shy as he never speaks in class.
19. It was so good game that the stadium was packed.
20. The doctor has so many patients that he could not see them all.

## **27. PASSIVE VOICE**

**Exercise 151.** Change the active to the passive by supplying the correct form *of be*.

1. Tom opens the door. — The door \_\_\_ opened by Tom.
2. Tom is opening the door. — The door \_\_\_ opened by Tom.
3. Tom has opened the door. — The door \_\_\_ opened by Tom.
4. Tom opened the door.
5. Tom was opening the door.
6. Tom had opened the door.
7. Tom will open the door.
8. Tom is going to open the door.
9. Tom will have opened the door.

**Exercise 152.** Change the active to the passive.

1. Shakespeare wrote that play.
2. Bill will invite Ann to the party.
3. Alex is preparing that report.
4. Waitresses and waiters serve customers.
5. The teacher is going to explain the lesson.
6. Shirley has suggested a new idea.
7. Two horses were pulling the farmer's wagon.
8. Kathy had returned the book to the library.
9. By this time tomorrow the president will have made the announcement.
10. I didn't write that note, Jim wrote it.
11. Alice didn't make that pie. Did Mrs. French make it?
12. Does Prof. Jackson teach this course? I know that Prof. Adams doesn't teach it.
13. Mrs. Andrews hasn't signed those papers yet. Has Mr. Andrews signed them yet?
14. Is Mr. Brown painting your house?
15. His tricks won't fool me.

**Exercise 153.** Change the active to passive if possible. Some verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed.

1. A strange thing happened yesterday.
2. Jackie scored the winning goal.
3. My cat died.
4. I agree with Dr. Ikeda's theory.
5. Dr. Ikeda developed that theory.
6. Timmy dropped the cup.
7. The cup fell to the floor.
8. The assistant manager interviewed me.
9. It rained hard yesterday.
10. A hurricane destroyed the small fishing village.
11. Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago.
12. A large vase stands on the table.

**Exercise 154.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. My neighbor is very proud of her new grandson who born last week.
2. I'm very fond of this old brooch because it was belonged to my grandmother.
3. My family live in Scotland but I was educated in France.
4. I'm afraid I can't lend you my camera. It's repairing this week.
5. The bridge was collapsed during the floods but fortunately no one was using it at the time.
6. If you aren't careful what you're doing with that hammer someone will hurt in a minute!
7. The word "stupid" was in my report but it wasn't referred to you.
8. I'm sorry I'm late. I got held up in the traffic.
9. When did you discover that the money had been disappeared?
10. Children under the age of seven do not allow in this pool.

**Exercise 155.** Change the active to the passive.

1. The company has cut all the salaries.
2. The bank manager kept me waiting for half an hour.
3. Employers must pay all travel expenses for this training course.
4. Do you suppose your brother could have written such a letter?
5. They use a computer to do that job nowadays.
6. During the recession the firm was making people redundant almost every week.
7. Nobody informed the police that there had been a mistake.

8. Where will your company send you next year?
9. The news about the famine distressed Josephine.
10. I've still got the camera because no one has claimed it.
11. Has anyone ever asked you for your opinion?
12. The children shouldn't have opened that parcel.
13. All visitors must wear identity badges.

**Exercise 156.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Steak was eaten by me last night.
2. When we work hard, we accomplish a lot.
3. Jane wrote a very good composition for her writing class.
4. We laughed when the clown fell out of the car.
5. Workers built the road in two years at a cost of five million dollars.
6. The people loved their leader and his mistakes were forgiven by them.
7. The phone was answered by John on the first ring.
8. Paul teaches English in high school and writes short stories in his free time.
9. Most American cars are built in Detroit, Michigan.
10. My uncle worked hard all his life and left a sizable estate when he died.
11. My father and I played chess for several hours yesterday.
12. As we neared the house, a small dog sitting on the porch could be seen by us.
13. Some people committed a lot of crimes in this neighborhood last month.
14. If you studied more, your tests could be easily passed.
15. The students opened their books and began to read.
16. As John approaches his fortieth birthday, he is reassessing the direction of his life.
17. The light was turned on by me as I entered my bedroom.
18. That electronics company is expanding and many new products are being developed by them.
19. Soldiers fought the Battle of Hastings in 1066.
20. Her earrings were put on by Jane before she went to the party.
21. During the war thousands of persons were forced to leave their homes.
22. Claire painted the living room and a new carpet was laid by her.
23. Jack works hard during the week and his free time is spent sailing his new boat.
24. Bob plays the piano and the guitar is played by him also.

## **28. CAUSATIVE VERBS**

**Exercise 157.** Answer the questions in the way shown.

1. Did Ann make that dress herself? — No, she had it made.
2. Did you cut your hair yourself? — No, I \_\_\_\_.
3. Did they paint the house themselves? — No, they \_\_\_\_.

4. Did Jim cut down that tree himself? — No, \_\_\_.
5. Did Sue repair the car herself? — No, \_\_\_.

**Exercise 158.** Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form.

1. Are you going to make your daughter (to work) part time in the store this summer?
2. Let's get some of our money (to exchange) for dollars.
3. They had their lawyer (to change) their will.
4. Would you let us (to borrow) your notes?
5. My teacher helped me (to get) this job.
6. I can't seem to make this dishwasher (to run).
7. Nora got her mother's wedding dress (to alter) so that it fit perfectly.
8. I like the way you had the beautician (to do) your hair.
9. Larry is so good-hearted, he lets people (to take) advantage of him.
10. Bob said that he would help us (to find) the place.
11. Patsy makes everyone (to do) his share around the house.
12. We will have to get someone (to fix) the phone right away.
13. We are going to have our car (to fix) before we go to Toronto.
14. Don't let this (to bother) you.
15. This book should help you (to understand) the lecture.
16. It costs about sixty dollars to have a tooth (to fill).

**Exercise 159.** Complete the sentences using the words in parentheses.

Example: We are having the house painted (the house / paint) at the moment.

1. Did \_\_\_ (you / your hair / cut) last week?
2. Your hair is too long. I think you should \_\_\_ (it / cut).
3. How often \_\_\_ (you / your car / service)?
4. The engine in Tom's car couldn't be repaired, so he had to \_\_\_ (a new engine / fit).
5. \_\_\_ (you / your newspaper / deliver) or do you go to the shop yourself to buy it?
6. What are those workmen doing in your garden? — Oh, I \_\_\_ (a swimming pool / build).
7. Can I see those holiday photographs you took? — I'm afraid not. I (not / the film / developed) yet.
8. Is it true that many years ago he \_\_\_ (his portrait / paint) by a famous artist?

**Exercise 160.** Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. The doctor made the patient \_\_\_ in bed. (stay)
2. Mrs. Crane had her house \_\_\_. (paint)
3. The teacher had the class \_\_\_ a 2000-word research paper. (write)
4. I made my son \_\_\_ the windows before he could go outside to play. (wash)
5. Don got some kids in the neighbourhood \_\_\_ out his garage. (clean)

6. I went to the bank to have a check \_\_\_. (cash)
7. Tom had a bad headache yesterday, so he got his twin brother Tim \_\_\_ to class for him. (go) The teacher didn't know the difference.
8. My boss made me \_\_\_ my report because he wasn't satisfied with it. (redo)
9. Alice stopped at the service station to have the tank \_\_\_. (fill)
10. Peeling onions always makes me \_\_\_. (cry)
11. I got Mary \_\_\_ me some money so I could go to a movie last night. (lend)
12. Mr. Fields went to a doctor to have the wart on his nose \_\_\_. (remove)
13. We had a professional photographer \_\_\_ pictures of everyone who participated in our wedding. (take)
14. I spilled some tomato sauce on my suit coat. Now I need to get my suit \_\_\_. (clean)

**Exercise 161.** Replace the phrase underlined with the structure *have something done*.

Example: I didn't recognise Sheila. The hairdresser's dyed her hair. She's had her hair dyed.

1. I've been getting a lot of annoying phone calls, so the telephone company is going to change my number.
2. Gabrielle broke her leg six weeks ago but she's much better now. In fact the doctor should be taking the plaster off tomorrow.
3. Since Rowland made a lot of money, he's not content with his little cottage, so an architect's designed him a fine new house.
4. This room gets too hot when the sun shines so I'm getting someone to fit blinds on the windows.
5. I heard that Mrs Green didn't trust her husband so she hired a detective to follow him!
6. We don't really know what Shakespeare looked like. I wish he had asked someone to paint his portrait before he died.
7. My sister had always been self-conscious about her nose so she decided to go to a clinic for an operation which will straighten it.

**Exercise 162.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. She made the baby to take a nap.
2. Do you think we can get Karen takes us to San Diego?
3. Tom had a tooth fill.
4. Professor Baker let us to write a paper instead of taking a final exam.
5. Her husband always helps her that she does the laundry.
6. Professor Rogers didn't make us typed up our lab reports.
7. I want to get the house paint before winter.
8. Have you had your temperature taking yet?
9. When I was learning to drive, my Dad let me using his car.

10. Don't you help each other the study for tests?
11. When Cliff was sick with the flu, his mother made him to eat chicken soup and rest in bed.

**Exercise 163.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. Jack got his dog to bring him slippers.
2. Jane was having her hair to cut when somebody called her.
3. Harry has had his sister typed the report.
4. Can you help me to pack my things?
5. Have you had your luggage registered yet?
6. It's impossible to make my parents to tidy up my room.
7. Could you make your son be quiet?
8. My parents never let me coming back home late.
9. The teacher helped the students correct all the mistakes.
10. The Greens always let their children to see the New year in with them.

## **29. RELATIVE CLAUSES**

**Exercise 164.** Complete the sentences using *who* / *whom* / *whose* / *where* / *which*.

1. What's the name of the man \_\_\_ car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place \_\_\_ people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person \_\_\_ believes that all wars are wrong.
4. An orphan is a child \_\_\_ parents are dead.
5. The place \_\_\_ we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
6. This school is only for children \_\_\_ first language is not English.
7. I don't know the name of the woman to \_\_\_ I spoke on the phone.
8. The man \_\_\_ is wearing glasses is a pop singer.
9. The window \_\_\_ was broken by the naughty boy will have to be repaired.
10. Mrs. Jackson, \_\_\_ we met in the supermarket yesterday, is my music teacher.
11. Rome is the city \_\_\_ he lived for ten years.
12. That was the day on \_\_\_ I first met Ann.
13. The girl, the brothers of \_\_\_ study in our school, looks very nice.
14. His new car \_\_\_ cost him a fortune, was really stunning.
15. I met the old lady \_\_\_ you were very kind to.
16. That's the book about \_\_\_ I've heard so much.

**Exercise 165.** Use the sentences in parentheses to make relative clauses.

Example: Tom's father goes swimming every day. (Tom's father is 78.) — Tom's father,

who is 78, goes swimming every day.

1. She told me her address. (I wrote her address down on a piece of paper.)
2. She showed me a photograph of her son. (Her son is a policeman.)
3. We decided not to swim in the sea. (The sea looked rather dirty.)
4. The new stadium will be opened next month. (The stadium holds 90.000 people.)
5. John is one of my closest friends. (I have known John for eight years.)
6. That man over there is an artist. (I don't remember his name.)
7. Opposite our house there is a nice park. (There are some beautiful trees in this park.)
8. The storm caused a lot of damage. (Nobody had been expecting the storm.)
9. The postman was late this morning. (The postman is nearly always on time.)
10. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. (Bristol is only 30 miles away.)
11. Mr. Edwards has gone into hospital for some tests. (His health hasn't been good recently.)
12. Jack looks much nicer without his beard. (His beard made him look much older.)
13. I went to see the doctor. (The doctor told me to rest for a few days.)
14. Thank you for your letter. (I was very happy to get your letter.)
15. A friend of mine helped me to get a job. (His father is the manager of a company.)
16. Next weekend I'm going to Glasgow. (My sister lives in Glasgow.)
17. The population of London is now falling. (London was once the largest city in the world.)
18. I looked up at the moon. (The moon was very bright that evening.)
19. We spent a pleasant day by the lake. (We had a picnic by the lake.)

**Exercise 166.** Choose one word or phrase (A), (B), (C), or (D) to complete the sentences.

1. Alexander Fleming, \_\_\_ received the Nobel Prize in 1945.  
(A) who discovered penicillin    (C) he discovered penicillin  
(B) which discovered penicillin    (D) that discovered penicillin
2. John James Audubon, who was a naturalist and an artist, wrote great work \_\_\_ called "Birds of America".  
(A) which it is    (B) which is    (C) whom is    (D) is
3. Immigrants \_\_\_ after 1880 settled mainly in large cities.  
(A) which came to America    (C) came to America  
(B) they came to America    (D) who came to America
4. Hawaii, which is a part of a group of islands, \_\_\_ active volcanoes.  
(A) that has    (B) which has    (C) has    (D) who has

5. In the ear, just above the cochlea, there are three small semicircular canals \_\_\_ as an organ of balance.  
 (A) that function together      (C) are functioning together  
 (B) function together      (D) they function together
6. Amsterdam, Holland, which is sometimes called Venice of Northern Europe \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) which has many canals      (C) with many canals  
 (B) it has many canals      (D) has many canals
7. The Egyptians constructed walls and embankments \_\_\_ marvels even today.  
 (A) they are considered      (C) are considered  
 (B) which are considered      (D) who are considered
8. Ernest Hemingway, a novelist and short-story writer, developed a prose style \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) who influenced an entire generation of authors  
 (B) influenced an entire generation of authors  
 (C) that influenced an entire generation of authors  
 (D) has influenced an entire generation of authors

**Exercise 167.** Identify the relative clauses as *restrictive* (R) or *nonrestrictive* (N).

1. Marry Poppins, who was created by P.L. Travers, carries a perfectly rolled umbrella with a parrot handle.
2. Sports drinks, which are intended to replace fluids and nutrients lost during exercise, can be high in calories.
3. Josie is a triskaidekaphobic, which means she has an abnormal fear of the number thirteen.
4. A multiple independently targetable re-entry vehicle, which is known as a MIRV, is a long-range missile with more than one warhead.
5. Anyone who has a legitimate business reason can run a credit check on you without your permission.
6. Milk which had not been pasteurized can cause sickness and even death.
7. The Becks' dish antennae, which brings in hundreds of television channels, was very expensive.
8. The habits that are easiest to break are the good ones.
9. Our toaster consistently makes toast that is golden brown on one side and dark brown on the other.
10. An electric guitar has a solid body, unlike an acoustic guitar, which has a hollow body.

**Exercise 168.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).

Correct mistakes.

1. I like novels who deal with philosophical questions.
2. The company did not want to hire a man that his experience was so limited.
3. The family whose house burned down was on television.
4. She wore a dress what everyone considered extravagant.
5. Where can one catch the train, which goes to Flower Square?
6. The ship that we boarded in Rio was bound for Marseilles.
7. John did not want to do business with a man which had been in prison.
8. Take your car back to the man who sold it to you.
9. That is the baby which has been in the incubator for three months.
10. The woman that her photograph was in the paper is making a speech at the town hall tonight.

### **30. SUBJUNCTIVE**

**Exercise 169.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Mr. Waldman recommends that Dorinda (be, is) promoted.
2. I insist that Marc (stop, stops) coming to class in that gorilla suit.
3. Miss Lincoln demands that James (prepare, prepares) carefully for each case.
4. We demand that a new counselor (be, is) hired.
5. Mrs. McKellop requests that Vivette (come, comes) to her office at once.
6. I move that nominations (be, are) closed.
7. Park rules require that each person (leaves, leave) by midnight.
8. The gas station attendant asked that Ronald (to pull, pull) up a little close to the pump.
9. The man insists that he (is, be) executed from the jury duty.
10. The doctor recommended that Paula (went, go) on a strict diet.
11. President Downing insists that the demonstration (to be, be) ended.
12. Requests that Yosemite (become, becomes) a national park were granted in 1890.
13. I suggest that every applicant (fills, fill) out the form carefully.
14. Alec's boss insists that he (be, is) on time for work every day from now on.
15. She ordered that the door (to be, be) closed.
16. He recommends that she (writes, write) her paper tonight.

**Exercise 170.** Complete the following sentences. In many of the sentences there is more than one possible completion.

1. Mr. Adams insists that we \_\_\_ careful in our writing.
2. They requested that we not \_\_\_ after midnight.

3. She demanded that I \_\_\_ her the truth.
4. I recommended that Jane \_\_\_ to the head of the department.
5. I suggest that everyone \_\_\_ a letter to the governor.
6. It is essential that I \_\_\_ you tomorrow.
7. It is important that he \_\_\_ the director of the English program.
8. It is necessary that everyone \_\_\_ here on time.
9. The doctor advised that I \_\_\_ on a diet.
10. The restaurant suggested that we \_\_\_ on time for our reservation.

**Exercise 171.** Give the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.

1. Her adviser recommended that she (take) five courses.
2. He insisted that the new baby (name) after his grandfather.
3. The doctor recommended that she (stay) in bed for a few days.
4. The students requested that the test (postpone), but the instructor decided against the postponement.
5. I requested that I (permit) to change my class.
6. It is essential that pollution (control) and eventually (eliminate).
7. It was such a beautiful day that one of the students suggested we (have) class outside.
8. The movie director insisted that everything about his production (be) authentic.
9. It is vital that no one else (know) about the secret government operation.
10. She asked that we (be) sure to lock the door behind us.
11. It is essential that no one (admit) to the room without proper identification.
12. It is important that you (be, not) alone.
13. It is imperative that he (return) home immediately.
14. The governor proposed that a new highway (build).
15. She specifically asked that I (tell, not) anyone else about it. She said it was important that no one else (tell) about it.

**Exercise 172.** Define whether these sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. Tom suggested that I should look for another job.
2. Tom suggested that I look for another job.
3. Tom suggested that I looked for another job.
4. Tom suggested me to look for another job.
5. Where do you suggest I go for my holiday?
6. Where do you suggest me to go for my holiday?
7. Where do you suggest I should go for my holiday?
8. The teacher suggested that her students to write compositions on their experiences with ESP.
9. The doctor insisted that his patient taking it easy for three months.
10. I suggest that he goes to the doctor as soon as he returns from taking the exam.

11. The doctor suggested that she not smoke.
12. I propose that the vote is secret ballot.
13. The foreign student advisor recommended that she studied more English before enrolling at the university.
14. She insisted that they give her a receipt.
15. The law requires that everyone has his car checked at least once a year.

**Exercise 173.** Define whether these sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. The supervisor recommended that all employees took a course in speed reading.
2. They request that you be fluent in Spanish.
3. My doctor urges that I am stopping smoking immediately.
4. It was essential that the train leave on time.
5. The professor advised that John had a private tutor for a few weeks.
6. The admiral demanded that his crew has inspection twice a day.
7. They asked that she not call before 8:00 a.m.
8. The gracious hosts insisted that Mr. Smith did not leave so early.
9. I suggested that he wear black for the ceremony.
10. The police require that a driver renews his license every three years.
11. The instructions ask that we don't use a red pen.
12. The law requires that students be in school a certain number of days a year.
13. It was important that money was collected for the cause.

### **31. INCLUSIVES:**

**as well as**  
**neither ... nor**

**both ... and**  
**not only ... but also**

**either ... or**  
**whether ... or**

**Exercise 174.** Fill in the gaps with necessary words.

1. The weather on Sunday will be \_\_\_ sunny and warmer.
2. My fiancé is attractive and intelligent \_\_\_ considerate.
3. The objective is \_\_\_ to identify the problem but also to solve.
4. We can use the bike both to ride to school \_\_\_ to go to the grocery store.
5. To reach your goal, you must plan and work \_\_\_ dream.
6. Not only her parents \_\_\_ her brothers and sisters live in Wisconsin.
7. The party will celebrate \_\_\_ our finishing the term and your getting a new job.
8. We will keep in touch both writing and calling \_\_\_ visiting each other.
9. To complete his physical education credits, John took \_\_\_ swimming but also golf.

**Exercise 175.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. Model airplanes can be guided both by control wires or by radio transmitters.
2. Although fish can hear, they have neither external ears or eardrums.
3. Rust not only corrodes the surface of metal nor weakens its structure.
4. For twenty years, Bobby Fischer played in either a tournament nor an exhibition game after winning the World Chess Championship in 1972.
5. X-rays have important applications, not only in medicine and in industry.
6. She speaks both English as well as Spanish at home.
7. Both Mary, Ellen and Jean are going on the tour.
8. The program provides only not theoretical classes but also practical training.
9. Virginia opened and a saving account and a checking account.
10. There are snacks both in the refrigerator and in the oven as well on the table.
11. The new models are not also less expensive but more efficient also.
12. To judge your friends, you should not listen to what they say only observe what they do.
13. Mr. Roberts is a noted chemist and too a very effective teacher.
14. Professor Duncan teachers both anthropology as well as sociology each fall.

**Exercise 176.** Define whether these sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Some students can neither write or speak accurately.
2. That course includes not only TOEFL preparation but also techniques of test-taking.
3. They like both living abroad as well as living at home.
4. He is neither limber nor quick.
5. Tom won not only the 100-yard dash but the broad jump also.
6. Either you will attend class regularly or you can expect a low grade.
7. Whether out of necessity or greed, he accepted the bribe.
8. The play was both long, boring, and depressing.
9. Both the president and vice-president gave speeches last night.
10. He is both deceptive as well as irresponsible.

### **32. KNOW / KNOW HOW**

**Exercise 177.** Choose the correct form of *know* or *know how* in these sentences.

1. If he \_\_\_, he would lend his car.
2. I don't \_\_\_ to use the card catalog in the library.
3. Until he came to the United States to study, he didn't \_\_\_ to cook.
4. Do you \_\_\_ to type?
5. You'll have to help her because she doesn't \_\_\_ to do it.
6. Although Mark has been cooking for many years, he still doesn't \_\_\_ to

- prepare French food in the traditional manner.
7. Marcy said that she \_\_\_ the procedures for doing the experiment, but when we began to work in the laboratory, she found that she was mistaken.
  8. Did you \_\_\_ that the actors' strike would delay the beginning of the new television season and cause the cancellation of many contracts?
  9. He \_\_\_ to repair the carburetor without taking the whole car apart.
  10. George \_\_\_ he could improve his test scores, but he did not have enough time to study.
  11. The director of this organization must \_\_\_ to manage money, sell his product, and satisfy the stockholders.
  12. A good student must \_\_\_ to study effectively.
  13. It is extremely important for an engineer to \_\_\_ to use a computer.

### **33. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION: *DESPITE /IN SPITE OF/ALTHOUGH***

**Exercise 178.** Complete these sentences with *although*, *in spite of* or *despite*.

1. \_\_\_ it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2. \_\_\_ all my careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
3. \_\_\_ I had planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
4. I love music \_\_\_ I can't play a musical instrument.
5. \_\_\_ being very tired, we carried on walking.
6. The heating was full on, but \_\_\_ this the house was still cold.
7. Keith decided to give up his job \_\_\_ I advised him not to.
8. \_\_\_ the light rain, the baseball game was not canceled.
9. She was still able to finish her assignment before class \_\_\_ she was interrupted.
10. \_\_\_ their quarrel, they are very good friends.
11. They arrived on time \_\_\_ the delay.
12. Dick and Sarah are still planning to get married \_\_\_ their disagreement.
13. \_\_\_ the pills that are available, many people still have trouble sleeping.
14. Most people still prefer to travel by plane \_\_\_ airfares increased greatly.

**Exercise 179.** Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use the word(s) in brackets.

Example: I couldn't sleep although I was tired, (despite) — I couldn't sleep despite being tired, (or despite the fact (that) I was tired).

1. Although he's got an English name, he is in fact German. (despite)
2. In spite other injured foot, she managed to walk to the village. (although)
3. I decided to accept the job although the salary was low. (in spite of)
4. We lost the match although we were the better team. (despite)

5. In spite of not having eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry. (even though)
6. They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)
7. My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)
8. I enjoy the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
9. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
10. I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (even though)

**Exercise 180.** Choose the word or words that correctly complete the sentences below.

1. (Although / Despite) cats cannot see in complete darkness, their eyes are much more sensitive to light than are humans' eyes.
2. (Although / In spite of) its frightening appearance, the octopus is shy and completely harmless.
3. The northwestern part of Texas is called the Panhandle (because / because of) its shape.
4. (Although / Despite) their light weight, aluminum alloys can be very strong.
5. (Although / In spite of) Adlai Stevenson was never elected President, he was one of the preeminent American politicians of the mid-twentieth century.
6. (Although / Despite) it can occur in adults, chicken pox is classified as a disease of childhood.

**Exercise 181.** Fill in the blanks with one of the words from ((A), ((B), ((C), or (D).

1. It looked dark and heavy \_\_\_ it was going to rain.  
 (A) although (C) as if  
 (B) unless (D) whereas
2. \_\_\_ I get your call, I will leave.  
 (A) As soon as (C) By the time  
 (B) As though (D) Now that
3. \_\_\_ he had read the instructions several times, he knew what to do.  
 (A) Whereas (C) Until  
 (B) After (D) While
4. \_\_\_ he cannot afford a car, he rides a bicycle.  
 (A) Unless (C) Though  
 (B) Whereas (D) Because
5. \_\_\_ the cities do not provide better and cheaper mass transport, the traffic problem will get worse.  
 (A) So that (C) If  
 (B) Even though (D) Before

6. \_\_\_ you go to Canada, you should visit Toronto.  
(A) When (C) Since  
(B) As (D) Unless
7. \_\_\_ riding a bicycle is a good leg exercise, it does not use up a lot of calories.  
(A) As (C) Because  
(B) Although (D) So that
8. She turned off the record player \_\_\_ she could study.  
(A) now that (C) so that  
(B) even if (D) in case

### **34. PROBLEM VERBS**

**Exercise 182.** Choose the correct word in parentheses.

1. The student (raised / rose) his hand in class.
2. Hot air (raises / rises).
3. Ann (set / sat) in a chair because she was tired.
4. I (set / sat) your dictionary on the table a few minutes ago.
5. Hens (lay / lie) eggs.
6. Al is (laying / lying) on the grass in the park right now.
7. Jan (laid / lay) the comb on the top of the dresser a few minutes ago.
8. If you are tired, you should (lay / lie) down and take a nap.
9. San Francisco (lays / lies) to the north of Los Angeles.
10. After studying all the new material, the student was able to (rise / raise) his test score by twenty-five points.
- 11 .The book that you see (laying / lying) on the table belongs to the teacher.

**Exercise 183.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Floyd (lay, laid) in the hammock while Sandy washed her new car.
2. When she gets a headache, Deirdre (lies, lays) down in dark room for several hours.
3. Ryan (sat, set) his Swiss Army knife on the bedside table next to his wallet and keys.
4. Bill (lain, laid) his hammer on the bench and began looking for longer nails.
5. Norman and Lynn spread an old tablecloth on the ground and (sat, set) in the grass to eat their picnic supper.
6. If you feel your hair standing on end during thunderstorm, (lie, lay) down quickly to avoid being hit by lightning.
7. Joan and Kate (sat, set) so close to the front of the theatre that they had to lean back to see the movie.

8. The new trophy (sat, set) on the bookcase.
8. Jean had (lain, laid) in the sun so long that her skin was bright pink.
10. Jack always (sits, sets) down one cup of coffee, forgets about it, and pours another.
11. Mayor Johansson helped (lie, lay) the cornerstone for the new municipal building.
12. That grandfather's clock has (set, sat) in the same spot for forty years.
13. The volcano had (lain, laid) dormant for fifty years when it suddenly erupted.
14. They have already (risen, raised) their family and now free to travel.
15. Never leave your purse (lying, laying) where someone might be able to steal it.

**Exercise 184.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. The cost of living has raised 3 percent in the past year.
2. Her coat was laying on the chair.
3. Please sit the telephone on the table by the bed.
4. The flag is risen at the dawn by an honor guard.
5. I have lain your notebook on the table by the door so that you won't forget it.
6. Won't you sit down?
7. Kay needs to rise her grades if she wants to get into graduate school.
8. Key West lays off the coast of Florida.
9. Their house sits on a hill overlooking a lake.
10. The landlord has risen the rent.
11. Linda always forgets where she lies her glasses.
12. Let's sit your suitcases out of the way.
13. The smoke that is raising from that oil refinery is black.
14. Terry has sat there waiting for us for almost an hour.
15. Susan likes to lay down for a short nap every afternoon.
16. We certainly hope that prices do not raise so quickly again.
17. She set her new chair between the sofa and the buffet.
18. The bread dough has raised enough and is now ready to be baked.
19. When Betty arrived home, she found her husband laying on the sofa asleep as usual.
20. Mrs. Jones had carefully lain her children's clothes out ready for the children to put on.

## PART III: STYLE IN WRITTEN ENGLISH

### 35. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**Exercise 185.** Choose the correct form of the verb in these sentences.

1. The student wasn't able to do the translation because he (not / know) some special terms.
2. I knew that Mercury (be) the closest planet to the Sun, but I didn't feel like answering the question.
3. Mike hoped that his friend (help) him with his car.
4. We didn't know the score, but we were sure their team (lose).
5. Yesterday Tom heard that his aunt (be ill) for five days.
6. The children were afraid of making any noise - Mom (sleep).
7. He gave all his money to me because he (trust) me.
8. We were told that Andrew (go) to enter that college.
9. The police found out that Bob Slant (live) in London's suburbs at that time.
10. My parents decided that we (celebrate) my birthday on Saturday.
11. Ann hasn't been informed that the lecture (not / take place) on Friday.

**Exercise 186.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. He was among the few who want to continue working on the project.
2. It is an accepted custom for a man to open the door when he accompanied a woman.
3. She closed the door and harries away to class.
4. We receive several applications a day and with them had been copies of transcripts and degrees.
5. Mr. Davis tried to finish his research, but he found only part of the information that he needs.
6. Between one thing and another, Charles does not finish typing his paper last night.
7. In 1990, according to statistics from the Bureau of Census, the population of the US is 250,000,000.
8. We do not receive mail yesterday because it was a holiday.
9. Mary does not finish her homework in time to go with us to the football game yesterday afternoon.
10. Although there are only two hundred foreign students studying at State University in 1970, there are more than five hundred now.
11. We thought he is planning to go on vacation after the first of the month.
12. Nancy said that she went to the supermarket before coming home.

**Exercise 187.** Correct mistakes in these sentences.

1. Abigail went into the furniture store and buys a mahogany chest for her bedroom.
2. After Sally chose the puppy, she takes it home in a doll's baby buggy.
3. Tricia's new lipstick lasts for nine hours, but it smelled and tasted like turpentine.
4. Regina never feels satisfied with what she does and wanted a better life for herself.
5. When Manny was in college, he wins his first orchid contest.
6. Luella will decide to drink bottled water after she tasted the tap water here.
7. After Maureen writes in her diary, she hid it in the secret drawer of her roll-top desk.
8. When Vicky retired, she starts belly-dancing lessons.
9. Brad can never remember telephone messages, but he had memorized hundreds of sports statistics.

10. Marlon's lawn mower does not start on cold days unless he put it in a sunny spot for at least half an hour.

**Exercise 188.** Most of the following sentences contain one mistake. Write TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. When I asked Joan about her work she said she had lost her job and is short of money.
2. Michael explained that he couldn't come to the party because he was working that evening.
3. We had a great evening with Janet. She is telling about her fascinating trip to Kenya.
4. I'm sorry to bother you, but you did say to call if I was worried.
5. We were disappointed when the receptionist told that the hotel was fully booked that week.
6. The museum guard asked the visitors to not touch the exhibits.
7. The tour guide explained that the castle is only open on Tuesdays.
8. I thought that he is coming home.
9. A research scientist at State University reported that he finds a blood test to diagnose cancer.
10. When she told us that everything was ready, we went into the dining room and seated ourselves.
11. They asked him if he will help us.
12. Professor Baker told his class that there 10,000 species of ferns.
13. They asked me what did happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.
14. I do not know where he could have gone so early in the morning.

**Exercise 189.** Change the sentences using reported speech.

1. Where are you going?-asked Tom.
2. Where are you going to spend the holiday?- asked Mike.
3. What will you do when you leave school? -said Jenifer.
4. How did you know my name?- he nurse asked the doctor.
5. Do you have an appointment?- said the clerk.
6. Have you seen my car keys?- said Bernard to his wife.
7. Why didn't Isabel call me?- asked her brother.
8. Will you carry my briefcase for me please, James?-said Richard.
9. When can I see the doctor?-Charles asked the receptionist.

### **36. SAY / TELL**

**Exercise 190.** Complete these sentences with *say* or *tell*.

1. Jack \_\_\_ me that he was enjoying his new job.
2. Tom \_\_\_ it was a nice restaurant but I didn't like it much.
3. The doctor \_\_\_ that I would have to rest for at least a week.
4. Mrs. Taylor \_\_\_ us she wouldn't be able to come to the next meeting.
5. Ann \_\_\_ Tom that she was going away.
6. George couldn't help me. He \_\_\_ to ask Jack.
7. Jill \_\_\_ us all about her holiday in Australia.
8. Jane \_\_\_ him that she would meet us here.
9. Margaret \_\_\_ that she would call before she came.
10. Randy \_\_\_ a lot of jokes and funny stories.
11. I have \_\_\_ the truth.
12. The girls \_\_\_ that they were hungry.
13. Ann \_\_\_ goodbye to me and left.
14. \_\_\_ us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
15. I wonder where Sue is. She \_\_\_ she would be here at 8 o'clock.
16. Don't \_\_\_ anybody what I \_\_\_. It's a secret just between us.

**Exercise 191.** Complete the sentences with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

1. Did you \_\_\_ your brother the truth about that money?
2. What \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ to Wendy last night? She looks terribly upset this morning.
3. Is something wrong? Can you \_\_\_ me about it?
4. My little sister kept asking me \_\_\_ her a story but I couldn't think of one.
5. If I asked you to marry me, what \_\_\_ (you)?
6. I never know what \_\_\_ to people when they pay me a compliment.
7. Don't worry, I'm sure everything will go smoothly. Anyway, the manager \_\_\_ to call him if we had any problems.
8. I'll never speak to him again after all the lies he \_\_\_ me last weekend.
9. If I were you, I \_\_\_ (not) anything to the police about your suspicions until you have more evidence.
10. Promise you \_\_\_ (not) anything to my parents. They'll be furious if they find out what I've done.
11. I \_\_\_ (already) you, I don't know where your diary is.
12. Please, \_\_\_ you'll forgive me. I'm really sorry for all the trouble I've caused.
13. I'm ready to serve the meal. Can you \_\_\_ the children to go and wash their hands, please?

### **37. ANTECEDENTS OF PRONOUNS**

**Exercise 192.** In the sentences below match the pronouns and their antecedents.

Example: Andy and Celeste have spent hundreds of hours restoring their old house. –  
their: Andy and Celeste.

1. Abrasive cleansers clean well, but they are also likely to scratch the surfaces of pots and pans.
2. Nancy says she plans to spend the whole day reorganizing her closets.
3. The aim of a home fire extinguisher is to cover a burning object with a substance that prevents oxygen from reaching it.
4. Do teenagers want their parents to understand them?
5. Joshua wrote his first autobiography when he was nine years old.
6. Several old friends called Keith to congratulate him after his letter was published in Sunday's newspaper.
7. Claudia uses a rearview mirror clipped onto her bicycle helmet.
8. Paul thinks the parrot understands what it says to him.
9. Gwendolyn told Dionysios she disapproved of his working.
10. Mrs. Wilowski asked her assistants to present their proposals at the staff meeting Tuesday.

**Exercise 193.** Identify the sentences below as TRUE (T) OR FALSE (F).

1. My cousin, who keeps track of fashion trends, says they are wearing shorter skirts this fall.
2. As always, if an offer sounds too good to be true, it probably is.
3. When little Miss Muffer ate her curds, she was eating something similar to cottage cheese.
4. Maureen uses a memory typewriter-printer, a computer, a laser printer, and a multiple-function telephone, which has created some confusion.
5. Doreen is using a toothbrush to clean the grout between the bathroom tiles, but it is old.
6. Bees collect nectar and use it as food.
7. Harry and Rich will always remember his birthday celebrations.
9. If the coiled wire inside a regular light bulb were spread out, it would be about two feet long.
9. Victor's mother wants him to go into nursing, but he doesn't want to become one.
10. Tailors recommend that suit pants for men be just long enough so that their socks don't show when they walk.

11. A quarter-pound burger weighs less than a quarter pound after it has been cooked.

**Exercise 194.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Luckily, everybody remembered their individual identification number.
2. Each of the women will take her own car to get it inspected.
3. Someone left their notebook in the conference room.
4. Both of the boys lost his mittens.
5. No one has finished his or her shopping yet.
6. When anyone becomes president of the bank, they must promise not to enter politics for at least two years.
7. Does anybody have his or her copy of the contract?
8. Everyone should floss their teeth for three to five minutes a day.
9. Although the party invitation had suggested wearing old clothes, no one wore less than their best.
10. One of them puts his lunch out on the windowsill every day to keep it cool.

**Exercise 195.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Mr. Smith told Mr. Jones that he had lost a lot of money in the stock market.
2. In the telephone directory, it says to call directory assistance in that situation.
3. When Peter finished the examination, he gave it to the professor.
4. Cathy saw her friend as she was driving home from work.
5. When John put a new frame on the picture, it looked strange.
6. The laundry was not dry enough for Susan to bring it into the house.
7. He put all his savings in the stock market, and it suffered great losses that year.
8. When Jack was in the navy, he learned electronics.
9. In the newspaper it says there is renewed interest in the silver market.
10. The A Team played the B Team yesterday, and now it is in first place.

**Exercise 196.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Pay attention to the number agreement of a pronoun and its antecedent.

1. Every one of my girl friends has given their opinion of me.
2. Every person who asked was permitted to bring his or her book to class to use during the examination.
3. Neither the doctor nor her patients had an opportunity to express their feelings.
4. I am looking for a person who has forgotten their suitcase.
5. Each of the children may use the swimming pool if he promises to be careful.
6. Neither my sisters nor my mother has remembered her promise to me.

7. Many of the students explained his situation to me personally.
8. If anybody is in the office, they will answer their telephone.
9. If everybody who had come to the meeting had brought their report with them, the meeting would have gone a lot more smoothly.
10. Neither the cat nor the dog will eat the food I bought for him.
11. One of my daughters has left her purse on the coffee table.
12. Neither of the police officers was willing to give me his name.
13. The news from that country is well known for their objectivity.
14. Either the boss or her workers will have to give a little of their time to solve this problem.
15. Great works of art, such as the Mona Lisa and Whistler's Mother, can be deceptive their simplicity.
16. One sometimes gives up something they want for sake of others.
17. One of the first students to come into the room could not find his name on the list.
18. Nobody lost their patience even though the meeting was long and boring.
19. Everybody must pay their fair share towards the gift.
20. All of my friends brought their husbands with them to my party.

**Exercise 197.** Two pronouns/adjectives are underlined in each sentence. Indicate which of them is not correct, A or B.

1. The team has finished its season with another victory for their supporters.  
A B
2. Neither Bob nor his friends received his test scores.  
A B
3. Every discount store advertises that their products are cheaper than its competitors'.  
A B
4. His parents told them to put his coat on.  
A B
5. Anyone who can achieve such success by themselves is a credit to his company.  
A B
6. Not only Tom but also Barbara had their books taken from its locker.  
A B
7. Everyone has put their equipment back into its proper place.  
A B
8. Someone has forgotten to put their name on his term paper.  
A B

### **38. THE PRONOUNS ONE AND YOU**

**Exercise 198.** Correct mistakes in these sentences paying attention to the person of the pronoun.

1. At a large university, one will almost always be able to find a friend who speaks

your language.

2. If one knew the facts, you would not be so quick to criticize.
3. In order to graduate, one must present their thesis thirty days prior to the last day of classes.
4. Regardless of one's personal beliefs, you have the responsibility to report the facts as impartially as possible.
5. If one does not work hard, you cannot expect to succeed.
6. Each of the students in the accounting class has to type their own research paper this semester.
7. Those of you who signed up for Dr.Daniel's anthropology class should get their books as soon as possible.
8. A person can expect to receive a traffic ticket when we drive too fast.
9. When one has a toothache, you should go to the dentist.
10. One should remember to pay your telephone bill on time.
11. One should have ones teeth checked regularly.

**Exercise 199.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. When a person eats well, you feel well.
2. For successful completion of this exercise, one must give his complete attention to the task at hand.
3. One should always pay your rent promptly.
4. One should never forget his obligations to his family.
5. One often forgets one's early failures.
6. When a person is learning to play a musical instrument, we must practice several hours a day.
7. When one goes through life, we meet many challenges.
8. One can always rely on one's friends in time of need.
9. When a person goes to a foreign country, he must expect many things to be different.
10. When you find yourself in an air-conditioned theatre, one often wishes he had a sweater.

### **39. ILLOGICAL PARTICIPIAL MODIFIERS (DANGLING PARTICIPLES)**

**Exercise 200.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Playing in the street, the truck hit the child.
2. By painting and repairing as needed, your home can be kept in good condition.
3. Before leaving, Jane kissed me goodbye.
4. Addressed and stamped, I dropped the letter in the slot.

5. While a student at college, my mother met my father.
6. Walking toward the church, the stained-glass windows looked beautiful.
7. To understand the subject, a great deal of studying must be done.
8. Skiing down the steep hill, my heart beat crazily.
9. Watching her daughter play, Mary thought about life as a mother.
10. Once learned, a language cannot easily be forgotten.
11. When only a child, my father taught me how to play soccer.
12. Studying and reading, the day passed quickly.
13. To make a good cup of coffee, one must begin with high-quality coffee beans.
14. Sitting alone in his room, the strange noise frightened him.
15. Wrapped in pretty green paper, Phyllis put the package on the table.

**Exercise 201.** Identify whether the sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).

1. Containing tennis courts and pools, some marinas are more like resorts than boat garages.
2. Having watched the movie closely, the ending was confusing.
3. Viewing alcohol as a beverage, it is often not considered a drug.
4. Having been laid off from his job in an aircraft factory, Virgil became a detective in order to pay his mortgage bills.
5. Imagining that life exists on Titan, one of Saturn's moons, many science fiction stories have been written.
6. Riding on a rubber raft, Leslie and Collen traveled down the Snake River.
7. Remarking that too many Americans have forgotten what Memorial Day means, the parade attracted a very small crowd.
8. Believing the ten-year-old clothes in the back of her closet will someday come back into fashion, none of them have been thrown away.

**Exercise 202.** Correct illogical participial modifiers.

1. Claiming she never wins anything, the lottery ticket was thrown away by Zoraida.
2. Putting in many extra hours at the supermarket, the fire company is no longer Gary's first priority.
3. Now believed to be Iceland, the Romans called a land north of Britain Ultima Thule.
4. Using the computerized sewing machine, elaborate lettering and decorative patterns were sewn by Johanna.
5. Running to my car, a ring was found by me.
6. Wearing a morning coat and striped trousers, tea was brought in on a silver tray by the butler.
7. Using a metal detector, the lost class ring was searched for by May and Frederick.
8. Running home from school, a dog bit me.
9. When only a child, my father took me to the circus.
10. Hidden in his pocket, George left the room with the key.

11. To understand the directions, they must be read carefully.

#### **40. PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES**

**Exercise 203.** Identify the participles in the sentences below.

1. Annie soldered the colored pieces of glass together.
2. Many unaccompanied children regularly fly across the country.
3. Briggs named his car Whistler because of the hissing sounds it makes.
4. New Yorkers assume that a flashing "Don't Walk" sign actually means "Run".
5. Helen collects sunglasses made in the 50s and 60s.
6. Chip describes himself as an innocent guppy swimming among the sharks.
7. Laurel came to work wearing shorts, blouse, a tailored jacket, and flat shoes.
8. A barometer measures the weight of the air covering the earth's surface.
9. El Dorado was the fabled city of gold sought by early Spanish explorers in the New World.
10. Heather wears adhesive bandages decorated with cartoon characters.

**Exercise 204.** Choose the word or words that best complete each sentence.

1. The largest (knowing/known) insects are found in tropical rain forest.
2. A bill of lading is a (writing/written) receipt for goods that are sent by public transportation.
3. A hummingbird's heart beats at the (astonishing/astonished) rate of 615 beats per second.
4. At the peak of the jump, a pole-vaulter performs a series of (twisting/twisted) body motions to clear the bar.
5. Anyone (working/worked) under conditions that cause a heavy loss of perspiration can suffer heat exhaustion.
6. A mosquito (filled/ is filled) with blood is carrying twice its own body weight.
7. The state of Wisconsin has 72 counties, many (naming/named) after Indian tribes.
8. Sunspots occur in cycles, with the greatest number generally (appearing/are appearing) every 11 years.
9. A delta is a more-or-less triangular area of sediments (depositing/deposited) at the mouth of a river.
10. William H. Kilpatrick was a philosopher and scholar now generally (regarding/ regarded) as the father of progressive education.
12. Drug abuse is increasing at an (alarmed/alarmed) rate.
13. The petition has been signed by (concerning/concerned) citizens.

**Exercise 205.** Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I don't find this story (amusing/amused).
2. I must have the mixer (fixing/fixed).
3. My room is a mess: I really must get it (tidying/tidied) up.

4. I would stay at home after such a (tiring/tired) day.
5. Uncle Frank has a gentle old horse (naming/named) Pete on his farm.
6. Can you smell something (burning/burned)?
7. He opened the letter with (shaking/shaken) fingers.
8. She had rather a (pleasing/pleased) look on her face.
9. Deeply (shocking/shocked) I left them.
10. When (answering/answered) your question yesterday, I forgot this fact.
11. He walked along the road with his collar (turning/turned) up, hands in pockets.
12. I didn't enjoy the party because I was (boring/bored) there.
13. Why not throw away the (breaking/broken) umbrella, we are not likely to repair it.
14. She didn't pay any attention to the (ringing/rung) telephone.
15. Don't you think your hair needs (cutting/cut)?
16. Can you think of the name of an animal (beginning/begun) with "B"?

**Exercise 206.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. By the time Joan arrived, all of the food had been ate.
2. Having stolen the money, the thief ran down the street as fast as he could.
3. John had gave his speech when Bob was finally able to get to the meeting.
4. Wrote in 1847, the opera has never enjoyed popular success.
5. The professor told the class that they should have known the correct answer.
6. Claire has not wore her new coat since she came to Florida.
7. Betty began to cry when she realized that her new dress was torn.
8. Never having flied before, Mark was very excited as he drove to the airport.
9. I would like to have rang the bell earlier.
10. If he had shown the official his passport, he would not have any problems.
11. She has began to look like her mother.
12. That old horse has been ridden by children for years.
13. I would not have did it if he had not made me nervous.
14. The broke chair had only three lags.
15. He claims to have hurted his leg in the game last night.

#### **41. REDUNDANCY**

**Exercise 207.** Cross out the redundant word in each of the following sentences.

1. The money that I have is sufficient enough for my needs.
2. Bill asked the speaker to repeat again because he had not heard him the first time.
3. The class advanced forward rapidly.
4. She returned back to her hometown after she had finished her degree.
5. I am nearly almost finished with this chapter.
6. My teacher he said to listen to the news on the radio in order to practice listening comprehension.

7. The new innovations at the World's Fair were fascinating.
8. My sister she found a store that imported food from our country.

**Exercise 208.** Cross out the redundant word in each of the following sentences.

1. The sting of a scorpion is painful but rarely, seldom fatal.
2. There are almost nearly 5,000 miles of streets in New York City.
4. The first canal built in the United States connected together the Santee River and the Copper River in South California.
4. The Gila monster is the single only poisonous lizard found in the United States.
5. Around approximately ten percent of all solid wastes is glass.
6. The chief main ingredients in soap are fats and chemicals called alkalis.
7. The flowers of certain plants, such as for example daisies, are called composite flowers.
8. Most of the cities of the American West are separated apart from one another by vast, relatively unpopulated expanses of mountains and deserts.

## **42. WORDINESS**

**Exercise 209.** Write the shorter version of the following sentences.

1. The examination was finished by all the students within the allocated time.
2. The professor, who was tall and blond, lectured about medieval architecture.
3. Paul read Jane's letter in an exited state of mind.
5. The committee discussed the problem for a long time without being able to come to the point where a decision could be reached.
5. Crime and illegal acts are on the rise.
6. The girl who was wearing the colorful bathing suit is my cousin.
7. The glass figurine that was on display in the store window appealed to me.
8. Boston, which is the capital of Massachusetts, has many universities and colleges.
9. He walked down the stairs in a quick manner.
10. The young girl who is waiting by the door would like to see you.

**Exercise 210.** Define which sentences seem wordy.

1. The man indicated a negative response by shaking his head.
2. The house will probably be finished in four months.
3. The house on the corner burned down last night.
4. Jane went to the store with the purpose of selecting and purchasing a new dress.
5. Running on foot through the street, the thief was apprehended by the police.
6. My wife and I argued for hours before deciding to send our son to summer camp.
7. Bob saw several pieces of art that were expensive.
8. Jenny received several speeding tickets.
9. The ballerina danced her dances for hours.

10. Professor Blanton, who is the college president, will speak on this topic.
11. Betty opened the mysterious package cautiously.
12. The saleswoman in the red dress insulted me.
13. Three hours, was the length of time that we found necessary to drive to New York.
14. The Louvr is, a world-famous art museum, in Paris, France.
15. The book was read by me in four hours.

### **43. PARALLEL STRUCTURE**

**Exercise 211.** Find and correct mistakes in parallel structures in the following sentences.

1. Steel is alloyed with manganese to increase its strength, hardness and resistant to wear.
2. Sacramento is the commercial, industry, and financial center of California's Central Valley, as well as being the state capital.
3. When taking part in winter sports, one should wear clothing that is lightweight, warmth, and suitable for the activity.
4. Folklore consists of the beliefs, customs, traditions, and telling stories that people pass from generation to generation.
5. Because of their hardness, industrial diamonds can be used for cutting, to grind, and drilling.
6. Scholar John Fiske wrote on history, religious, and sociology.
7. Monterey, California, has long been a center for writers, artists, and the craftsman.
8. T.S. Eliot was equally distinguished as a poet, he wrote criticism and dramatist.
9. The book contained stories, poetic and plays.
10. She needed some shoes that were inexpensively, hard-wearing and attractive.
11. The paper contained mistakes in grammar, spelling and stylistic.
12. In the mornings, he usually has some coffee, reads the newspaper and will jog.
13. They do not eat pork nor are they eating shellfish.
14. Most visitors to London or Paris spend their time visiting the museums and to shop.
15. The course was very interesting and practical but costs.
16. Check your verbs for tense and agree.

**Exercise 212.** Find and correct mistakes in parallel structures in the following sentences.

1. By obeying the speed limit, we can save energy, lives and it costs us less.
2. My home offers me a feeling of security, warm, and love.
3. The pioneers labored to clear away the forest and planting crops.
4. When I refused to help her, she became very angry and shout at me.
6. In my spare time, I enjoy taking care of my aquarium and to work on my stamp collection.
7. Computers are often used to control, adjustment, and correct complex industrial

operations.

8. Mathematics can be considered a language, an art, a science, a tool or playing a game.
8. Paper may contain vegetable, minerals, or man-made fibers.
9. Many people who live near the ocean depend on it as a source of food, recreation, and to have economic opportunities.
10. This summer the Recreation Department will sponsor classes in swimming and to lift weights.
11. A bulldozer is used for pushing earth and to grade it.
12. In ancient Rome people used perfume for bathing, to soak their clothing, and even to give their horses a more pleasant odor.

**Exercise 213.** Identify the part of each sentence, which is not parallel in structure, and write the correct structure.

1. Pauline read the book, wrote a report, and returning it to the library.
2. This class will cover the basics: how to write, to listen, and speaking in front of a group.
3. The rules were quite clear: no smoking, they couldn't have visitors, and no loud music.
4. Eileen loved to run, doing her homework, and to watch television with her friends after school.
5. Essential to friendships are trusty and caring.
6. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wisdom.
7. This vacation I plan to swim, to hike, and getting lots of fresh air in the mountains.
9. Mary always believed that exercise and to read good books made her a well-rounded person.
10. Removing the front door and to carry the four-poster bed upstairs were the hardest parts of the move.
11. Increasing dietary intake of calcium and to exercise regularly are ways to prevent osteoporosis.
12. Marcia does not know whether to put hot food directly into the refrigerator or letting it cool first.
13. Many parents in our school district know neither how to make the school system work for them nor spotting problems before they get out of hand.
13. Will is not sure whether the rock he found is igneous or to be a sedimentary rock.
14. Botanical gardens not only educate the public about plants but also centers for scientific investigation into botany.
15. Amber can't remember whether a checkerboard had sixty-four squares or that it has forty-eight squares.

**Exercise 214.** Change the following sentences so that they are parallel.

1. Jane is young, enthusiastic, and she has talent.
2. We learned to read the passages carefully and underlining the main idea.
5. The duties of the new secretary are to answer the telephone, to type letters and book keeping.
4. The Patient's symptoms were fever, dizziness, and his head hurt.
5. Professor Williams enjoys teaching and to write.
6. She is not only famous in the United States, but also abroad.
7. The exam tested both listening and to read.
8. He is not only intelligent but also he is creative.
9. Flying is not only faster but also it is safer than travelling by car.
10. John registered for both Electrical Engineering and to study mathematics.
11. Henry will wash the clothes, iron the shirts, prepare the meal, dusting the furniture.
12. Most Americans would not be happy without a color television, two cars, and working at an extra job.
13. When they were in Mexico, they saw museums, ruins, and folk dancing.
14. He is young, intelligent, and has charm.
15. We enjoyed the varied cuisine and going to the excellent theater in New York.
16. That soup should not be served hot, but at a cold temperature.
17. Renting an apartment can be as expensive as to buy a house.
18. Going on vacation is more fun than to work in the summer.
19. She likes to read, to travel, and painting.
20. They came out of the building hurriedly, hailed a cab, and jump into it.

**Exercise 215.** Define whether the following sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Correct mistakes.

1. When he was a college student, he learned to play tennis, to golf, and swimming.
2. Do not speak out, but raise your hand.
3. To face adversity, to solve problems, and to overcome difficulties all give one sense of satisfaction.
4. We enjoyed the perfect weather and seeing fjords in Norway.
5. Go to window A, ask for a form, and bring it back to me.
6. Before he died, he had sold his house, wrote a will, and set up a trust fund.
7. Her hobbies are reading, playing piano, and gardening.
8. Being a homemaker is as difficult as working in an office.
9. After years of dealing with the public, she developed great charm, wit, and confidant.
10. On their vacation they enjoyed swimming at the beach, walking through the quaint streets, and sitting in the picturesque parks.
11. He could not decide whether to get a job or studying.
12. Although he was quick to criticize, he was slow praising his students.
13. The presidential candidate was a man of intellectual strength, moral character, and personal integrity.

14. The bellhop took my bags to my room, opened the door, and puts them at the foot of the bed.
15. Jogging is more vigorous exercise than to play golf.

#### **44. TRANSFORMATION OF DIRECT AND INDERECT OBJECTS**

**Exercise 216.** Define whether the following sentences below are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).

1. We returned the detective merchandise to the store immediately.
2. I hope you will write to me long letters while you are away.
3. When do you think you can deliver them the package?
4. That is the third time you have asked me the same question.
5. My mother is making for Mary a new shirt.
6. Please pass the potatoes to me after you take some.
7. The belt buckle cost over ten dollars to Bob.
8. He taught to me everything he new.
9. When she was abroad, Laura got several pairs of earrings for her mother.
10. He sent me a beautiful letter from Spain.

#### **45. INVERSION**

**Exercise 217.** Change each sentence by inverting the verb.

1. We rarely go to movies.
2. I seldom sleep past seven o'clock.
3. I hardly ever agree with her.
4. I will never forget the wonderful people I have met here.
5. I have never known Pat to be dishonest.
6. The mail scarcely ever arrives before noon.
7. He hardly ever comes to work on time.
8. Women at no time have had greater opportunities.
9. He was pleased with himself only after he received first prize.
10. The traffic had never been so bad.
11. She not only came but stayed for two hours.
12. You can buy tickets only before the opening of the show.
13. He did not say a single word during dinner.
14. They go to the theatre only on rare occasions.

**Exercise 218.** Change each sentence by inverting the verb.

1. He little thought he would be famous one day.

2. His ambition was such that he would stop at nothing.
3. The rain poured down for three days.
4. He little knows what is in store for him.
5. The balloon went up, and the people cheered.
6. The friends were few that he could rely on.
7. The winds were so strong that the trees were uprooted.
8. From its tiny cage the bird flew out.

**Exercise 219.** Change these sentences by inverting the verb. (Some sentences are incorrect as they stand).

1. The gun lay in the drawer.
2. There many reasons were for the choice.
3. A basket full of food was under the tree.
4. That she will arrive tomorrow is possible.
5. A horse stood beside the roadside.
6. There several details are which cannot be overlooked.
7. The telephone was next to the bed.
8. There a possibility is that we can go.

**Exercise 220.** Change the following indirect questions into direct questions.

1. I don't know when you wrote to the university.
2. I am not sure if that is the new catalogue.
3. Tell me what you mean.
4. I have no idea if she is coming.
5. Can you tell me where your register is.
6. I wonder how far it is to the nearest bus stop.
7. I would like to know if I have passed the test.
8. He wants to know what time the bookstore closes.

**Exercise 221.** These sentences contain mistakes in word order. Correct them.

1. Under the bed the dog lay.
2. Not until recently people have been so interested in health foods.
3. Scarcely the man had left when the bomb exploded.
4. Up the dog jumped when it saw its master.
5. There many references are at the back of the book.
6. So few his errors were that he could pass for a native speaker.
7. I wonder when will I get my test score results.
8. They haven't told me if I to write an essay.

**Exercise 222.** Rewrite the following sentences, inverting the subject and the verb.

1. I will never allow myself to be deceived in such a manner again.
2. She didn't think for one minute that she would win the competition.
3. One rarely finds a person of such integrity as Henry.
4. World peace will not be secure until all nuclear weapons are eliminated.
5. Sentries aren't allowed to leave their posts at any time.
6. Policemen are allowed to use guns only after several years' training.
7. I couldn't persuade her in any way to see the foolishness of her plan.
8. As soon as I settled down to read the paper, the doorbell rang.
9. She little realized how the evening was to end.
10. If you ever need any help, just give me a ring.
11. If she had found out that he had been married before, she would never have married him.
12. If life on other planets were ever found, there would probably be no means of communication.

## PART IV: PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, AND PROBLEM VOCABULARY

### 46. PREPOSITIONS

**Exercise 223.** Fill in the missing prepositions for each of the following.

1. She doesn't like to go far \_\_\_ her mother.
2. The students had a dispute \_\_\_ politics.
3. He is not only intelligent \_\_\_ nice.
4. The class size is limited \_\_\_ twenty-two.
5. Mrs. Finch is thought \_\_\_ be one of the worst teachers.
6. You are responsible \_\_\_ the payment.
7. You have a responsibility \_\_\_ your fellow residents.
8. I will eat neither ice cream \_\_\_ cake.
9. I will go either to the movies \_\_\_ to dinner.
10. My paper was based \_\_\_ the writings we read.
11. That movie was modeled \_\_\_ an old Hitchcock movie.
12. Success is the result \_\_\_ hard work.
13. Hard work results \_\_\_ success.

**Exercise 224.** Supply an appropriate preposition for each of the following.

1. Do you believe \_\_\_ ghosts?
2. Anthony is engaged \_\_\_ my cousin.
3. Ms. Balla substituted \_\_\_ our regular teacher yesterday.
4. I can't distinguish one twin \_\_\_ the other.
5. Did you forgive him \_\_\_ lying to you?
6. Children rely \_\_\_ their parents for food and shelter.

7. Tim wore sunglasses to protect his eyes \_\_\_ the sun.
8. Chris excels \_\_\_ sports.
9. Andrea contributed her ideas \_\_\_ the discussion.
10. I hope you succeed \_\_\_ your new job.
11. I'm very fond \_\_\_ their children.

**Exercise 225.** Fill in the blanks in the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I was disappointed \_\_\_ the grade I received on my last essay.
2. The medical Center is close \_\_\_ campus.
3. Since she graduated, Anne is no longer dependent \_\_\_ her parents for financial support.
4. Catherine became accustomed \_\_\_ spicy foods when she was traveling.
5. Table salt is composed \_\_\_ two elements, sodium and chlorine.
6. Is there enough \_\_\_ salad for everyone?
7. His computer is not capable \_\_\_ running this software.
8. Washington State is famous \_\_\_ its apples.
9. Was your choice of research topic acceptable \_\_\_ your instructor?
10. People who are afraid \_\_\_ heights are called acrophobes.
11. Water is essential \_\_\_ all life.
12. Were you aware \_\_\_ the regulation against smoking in this area?
13. Will this office be adequate \_\_\_ your company's needs?
14. I'm not familiar \_\_\_ that song.
15. One meter is approximately equal \_\_\_ a yard.
16. This movie is based \_\_\_ a true story.
17. What he said is contrary \_\_\_ common sense.
18. This summer he will be eligible \_\_\_ a three-week vacation.
19. The explanation that our instructor gave us was different \_\_\_ the one yours gave you.

**Exercise 226.** Supply appropriate prepositions.

1. I am grateful \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ your assistance.
2. The criminal escaped \_\_\_ prison.
3. Elizabeth is not content \_\_\_ the progress she is making.
4. Paul's comments were not relevant \_\_\_ the topic under discussion.
5. Have you decided \_\_\_ a date for your wedding yet?
6. My boots are made \_\_\_ leather.
7. I'm depending \_\_\_ you to finish this work for me.
8. Patricia applied \_\_\_ admission \_\_\_ the university.
9. Daniel dreamed \_\_\_ some of his childhood friends last night.
10. Mr. Miller dreams \_\_\_ owning his own business someday.
11. The accused woman was innocent \_\_\_ the crime with which she was charged.

12. Ms. Sanders is friendly \_\_\_ everyone.
13. Benjamin was proud \_\_\_ himself for winning the prize.
14. The secretary provided me \_\_\_ a deal of information.
15. Ivan compared the wedding customs in his country \_\_\_ those in the United States.

**Exercise 227.** Supply appropriate preposition.

1. I am not familiar \_\_\_ that author's works.
2. He doesn't approve \_\_\_ smoking.
3. I subscribe \_\_\_ several magazines.
4. Water consists \_\_\_ oxygen and hydrogen.
5. I became uncomfortable because she was staring \_\_\_ me.
6. She hid the candy \_\_\_ the children.
7. He never argues \_\_\_ his wife.
8. I arrived \_\_\_ this country two weeks ago.
9. We arrived \_\_\_ the airport ten minutes late.
10. Has Mary recovered \_\_\_ her illness?
11. I pray \_\_\_ peace.
12. I am envious \_\_\_ people who can speak three or four languages fluently.
13. Why are you angry \_\_\_ me? Did I do something wrong?
14. They are very patient \_\_\_ their children.
15. The students responded \_\_\_ the questions.

**Exercise 228.** Complete the sentences with *among* and *between*.

1. I was sitting \_\_\_ my two sisters when he came in.
2. Mother divided the cake \_\_\_ her three children.
3. I can't see any difference \_\_\_ these two maps.
4. They spent their holidays \_\_\_ the mountains.
5. They found the boy \_\_\_ the bushes in the garden.
6. She invited Jane \_\_\_ others.
7. These two brothers can never agree \_\_\_ themselves.
8. This family are always quarreling \_\_\_ themselves.
9. Just \_\_\_ ourselves, I can't stand that man.
10. The railway line runs \_\_\_ the road and the river.
11. The story is a dialogue \_\_\_ husband and wife.
12. There was a great quarrel \_\_\_ the two friends.
13. The property was divided equally \_\_\_ his son and daughter.
14. Rick and his wife can usually solve their problems \_\_\_ them.
15. The choice is \_\_\_ vanilla, chocolate, and strawberry ice cream cone.
16. Profits are divided \_\_\_ the stockholders of the corporation.
17. The votes were evenly divided \_\_\_ the Democratic candidate and the Republican candidate.

**Exercise 229.** Correct mistakes in the following sentences.

1. Wildflowers can be substituted with mowed grass on highway shoulders and medians.
2. To clear deep snow of a sidewalk or driveway, shovel the snow in layers, starting with the top few inches.
3. You can rely to Southerners never to agree about politics, religion or barbecuing.
4. Among dark and light turkey meat, the dark meat has more calories.
6. The "new, improved" cereal is neither different nor cheaper than the old one.
7. Unfortunately, my new computer is not compatible to my old computer printer.
8. Bricks made of sun-dried mud have been used as building materials since before 3,400 B.C., but such bricks are durable only warm, dry climates.
9. Cats are capable to living thirteen or fourteen years.
10. The albatross is the largest in the web-footed birds.

**Exercise 230.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. We drove the car into the driveway.
2. They came to visit us with a car.
3. The movie was reviewed by the critic.
4. He came to the United States for an education.
5. Did you notice that Bob walks as his father?
6. He opened the door by key.
7. Paula looks nothing like her sister.
8. They purchased the material for the yard.
9. Barbara enjoyed working as a bank teller for one summer.
10. He went to the store for buying a newspaper.
11. We would like to invite you to our home for dinner on your birthday.
12. He did not notice that the leg for the chair was broken before he sat down.
13. John went to the store to buy two pounds butter.
14. Would you please bring us some coffee with our meal?
15. They met at the movies 7:00.

**Exercise 231.** Define whether the following sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F).  
Correct mistakes.

1. Did you agree to your father on which car you should buy?
2. They arrived to Paris sometime early in the summer.
3. Were the students accustomed to leaving early on Fridays?
4. Whether we leave early or late depends about your schedule.
5. The doctor objected to the patient's leaving the hospital a day early.
6. David was surprised with the amount of time necessary to fix the car.

7. Henry was not very satisfied with the lab report that he wrote.
8. Switzerland is famous of its beautiful mountains.
9. The soldier showed great courage in the face of death.
10. This home certainly does not compare favorably at our old one.
11. The committee was in favor of increasing his salary.
12. Were you tired with waiting for her call?
13. He did not expect us to comment to his newly decorated office.
14. Are you familiar to early American art?
15. He spent his life in search for absolute truth.

#### **47. CONJUNCTIONS**

**Exercise 232.** Choose the correct word in the following sentences.

1. We cannot believe that he is the man \_\_\_ saved you from drowning.  
(A) that            (B) whom            (C) who            (D) whose
2. The only thing \_\_\_ stopped her from going to study abroad was the pleading of her grandmother.  
(A) who            (B) which            (C) whom            (D) why
3. Most folk songs are ballads \_\_\_ have simple words and tell simple stories.  
(A) what            (B) although            (C) with            (D) that
4. \_\_\_ other mammals, whales do not have a sense of smell.  
(A) not alike            (B) unlike            (C) unlikely            (D) dislike
5. John missed the neighborhood \_\_\_ he had grown up.  
(A) in which            (B) in where            (C) which            (D) that
6. I \_\_\_ like the film nor the novel it's based on.  
(A) both            (B) neither            (C) so            (D) either
7. \_\_\_ my brother and I were upset when we heard the news.  
(A) both            (B) and            (C) neither            (D) either
8. I met Tom \_\_\_ I was waiting for the bus.  
(A) while            (B) during            (C) then            (D) for
9. I have travelled a lot \_\_\_ by train and by plane.  
(A) both            (B) and            (C) or            (D) either
10. I wouldn't like to go to Scotland. – I wouldn't like to go \_\_\_ .

(A) neither      (B) too              (C) either      (D) both

11. He failed the test \_\_\_ he had studied hard.

(A) in spite of      (B) because      (C) as well as      (D) although

12. The friend \_\_\_ party I went to is a pianist.

(A) who              (B) whose              (C) which              (D) those

13. I wonder \_\_\_ he will come in time.

(A) weather              (B) whether              (C) what              (D) that

14. \_\_\_ walking for three hours we were tired.

(A) during              (B) since              (C) before              (D) after

15. North Carolina is well known not only for the Great Smoky Mountains Natural Park \_\_\_ for the Cherokee Indian Settlements.

(A) also              (B) and              (C) but also              (D) because of

**Exercise 233.** Choose the word that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. Stanley, a black cat, won Friday's contest, (but, for) he failed to win the contest on Saturday.
2. The Murrays plan to move, (for, yet) they have outgrown their one-room apartment.
3. My car's heater is noisy (and, nor) it heats very poorly.
4. Psychologists report that having one or more friends is important to a child's development, (but, for) being popular is not.
5. A foot-pound is used to measure energy, (but, for) a pound-foot is used to measure torque.
6. One of the largest jigsaw puzzles ever completed contained 10,000 pieces, (and, or) it took 2,500 hours to complete.
7. At about eighteen miles into a race, marathons runners often feel that they cannot go on, (for, yet) they usually get a second wind and finish the race.
8. Rocky Mountain National Park contains 355 miles of trails, (nor, so) visitors can hike as far and as high as they wish.
9. Incandescent bulbs neither use as little electricity as fluorescent bulbs, (nor, yet) do they last as long.

**Exercise 234.** Fill in the blanks with one of the words from (A), (B), (C), or (D).

1. It looked dark and heavy \_\_\_ it was going to rain.

(A) although              (C) as if  
(B) unless              (D) whereas

2. \_\_\_ I get your call, I will leave.  
 (A) As soon as      (C) By the time  
 (B) As though      (D) Now that
3. \_\_\_ he had read the instructions several times, he knew what to do.  
 (A) Whereas      (C) Until  
 (B) After      (D) While
4. \_\_\_ he cannot afford a car, he rides a bicycle.  
 (A) Unless      (C) Though  
 (B) Whereas      (D) because
5. \_\_\_ the cities do not provide better and cheaper mass transport, the traffic problem will get worse.  
 (A) So that      (C) If  
 (B) Even though      (D) Before
6. \_\_\_ you go to Canada, you should visit Toronto.  
 (A) When      (C) Since  
 (B) As      (D) Before
7. \_\_\_ riding a bicycle is good leg exercise, it does not use up a lot of calories.  
 (A) As      (C) Because  
 (B) Although      (D) So that
8. She turned off the record player \_\_\_ she could study.  
 (A) now that      (C) so that  
 (B) even if      (D) in case
9. A man is \_\_\_ old \_\_\_ he feels.  
 (A) so ... as      (B) as ... as      (C) as ... that
10. The fellow that agrees with everything you say is \_\_\_ a fool, \_\_\_ he is getting to skin you.  
 (A) both ... and      (B) not only ... but      (C) either ... or
11. Nothing \_\_\_ needs reforming \_\_\_ other people's habits.  
 (A) so ... as      (B) as ... that      (C) as ... as
12. \_\_\_ your daughter \_\_\_ your niece have made great progress.  
 (A) As ... as      (B) So ... as      (C) Both ... and

13. Her eyes were \_\_\_ large \_\_\_ small.

( A ) either ... or      ( B ) neither ... nor      ( C ) nor ... or

## **48. VOCABULARY**

**Exercise 235.** Choose the correct word.

1. Our holiday was spoiled by bad \_\_\_\_ .  
(A) weather                      (B) whether
2. There are several big parks in London \_\_\_\_ Hyde Park.  
(A) beside                      (B) besides
3. The information comes through secret \_\_\_\_ .  
(A) canal                      (B) channels
4. We \_\_\_\_ his excuse.  
(A) accepted                      (B) excepted
5. It will go \_\_\_\_ with the murderer if he is caught.  
(A) hard                      (B) hardly
14. Windsor \_\_\_\_ on the Thames of London.  
(A) lies                      (B) lays
15. I have to \_\_\_\_ you that our business with that company is very important to us.  
(A) remember                      (B) remind
16. The boys \_\_\_\_ the old bam for use by the club.  
(A) adapted                      (B) adopted
17. The captain ordered all the \_\_\_\_ to be fired.  
(A) canons                      (B) canons
10. The mercury in the thermometer is \_\_\_\_ to changes in temperature.  
(A) sensitive                      (B) sensible
11. The disease \_\_\_\_ his mind so that he could not remember what he had done.  
(A) effected                      (B) affected
12. The population of this town has been \_\_\_\_ for ten years at about 5000 people.  
(A) stationary                      (B) stationery
13. It isn't very \_\_\_\_ to leave the lights on when you're not in the room.  
(A) economic                      (B) economical

14. Do you believe in the \_\_\_ that all men are equal?  
(A) principal (B) principle
15. You are \_\_\_ losing your things!  
(A) continuously (B) continually
16. The police are on the \_\_\_ of the thieves.  
(A) cent (B) scent
17. Witnesses \_\_\_ the policemen's statement.  
(A) collaborated (B) corroborated
18. His blood \_\_\_ the ground.  
(A) dyed (B) died
19. A \_\_\_ referee will judge a basketball game fairly.  
(A) disinterested (B) uninterested
20. He was only three years old when his family \_\_\_ from Germany.  
(A) immigrated (B) emigrated
21. If you want to speak English fluently, you need more English \_\_\_\_ .  
(A) practice (B) practise
22. I \_\_\_ too much. I'm going to have a diet.  
(A) weight (B) weigh
23. The police found a \_\_\_ body in the river.  
(A) dead (B) died
24. I need your \_\_\_ on this paper. Could you do it just now?  
(A) signature (B) sign
25. Let's meet at seven o'clock. Will that time \_\_\_ you?  
(A) suitable (B) suit

**Exercise 236.** Define whether the following sentences are *TRUE (T)* or *FALSE (F)*.  
Correct mistakes.

1. Do you think that its difficult to learn a foreign language?

2. The modern art piece they chose was plain but bold.
3. The principle fact I would like you to remember concerns the human personality.
4. Are you quite sure you wish to spend that much for one chair?
5. His wife was formerly married to the Spanish Ambassador.
6. Her parents are quite old, but relatively healthful.
7. The young actress was able to create the allusion that she was middle-aged.
8. From reading his letter, I inferred that he was having financial problems.
9. He put his keys in his coat pocket so that he would not lose them.
10. Can you let the student continue with this course if he makes up all missed work?
11. Please leave him find out the truth by himself.
12. I do not trust that man; he has absolutely no principles.
13. I most fell off my seat laughing when I saw the clown chase the bull.
14. I think my battery has a loose connection.
15. Are you trying to infer that I should study more?

**Exercise 237.** Define whether the sentences are *TRUE (T)* or *FALSE (F)*.  
Pay attention to word choice.

1. He has all ready spent next month's allowance.
2. Marry looked all day for clothes suitable to cover the worn pillows.
3. Will John take his doctor's advice?
4. In a surprise vote the board excepted John from membership.
5. Can you get everybody altogether for the meeting in ten minutes?
6. Helen enjoys wearing the clothes she designs.
7. The two political candidates certainly differed loudly from each other.
8. One reason people will emigrate from their country is to escape political persecution.
9. Did you look besides the sofa for your book?
10. Do not try to drive further today.
11. Will you accept my apologies?
18. Why did so many people immigrate from Uruguay to go to Australia?
13. I was surprised at the advise he gave me.
14. Steve differs with his father in physical appearance.
15. Let me give you some farther instructions.

**Exercise 238.** Define whether the following sentences are *TRUE (T)* or *FALSE (F)*.  
Correct mistakes.

1. The whether is usually nice in Hawaii all year round.
2. They're buying a home in the city next year.
3. We met two of my father's business associates at the dinner.

4. Did you find out whose coming early?
5. I love to browse in stationary stores.
6. Bob thinks this material is too difficult for first-year students.
7. The students left there books on the floor during the exam.
8. The audience applauded respectively at the end of her speech.
9. Do not send any of these booklets too people who did not put their complete address on the form.
10. He parked his car on the street so that he would not have to pay for parking in the garage.

**Exercise 239.** Define whether the sentences are *TRUE (T)* or *FALSE (F)*. Pay attention to the part of speech according to the suffix.

1. Bob hopes to beauty his home by painting and carpeting.
2. Lawrence is a very happily man.
3. Japan is a very populous nation.
4. What do you think is the real of that situation?
5. Her manner was friendly and natural.
6. Dr. Smith's capacity for hard work was incredible.
7. I never questioned his accurately.
8. Jane was surprised that he spoke so childish.
9. That new medicine will not be readily available until next year.
10. Does the book list the populous of that country in 1950?
11. I was amazed at her natural beauty.
12. His illness was chronically.
13. He had an unhappy childlike.
14. You should realize the truth.
15. That country has a very large populate.

**Exercise 240. 1)** Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *same* in meaning as the word on the left.

1. a fiction  
 (A) falsehood      (B) fact      (C) books      (D) words
2. a theory  
 (A) research      (B) thought      (C) question      (D) explanation
3. to overwhelm  
 (A) climb      (B) overpower      (C) finish      (D) rebuild
4. security  
 (A) courage      (B) danger      (C) protection      (D) happiness

5. to determine  
(A) go around (B) find out (C) delay (D) work
6. an emotion  
(A) movement (B) reason (C) feeling (D) goal
7. an impression  
(A) opinion (B) result (C) income (D) example
8. to investigate  
(A) examine (B) hire (C) accuse (D) admire
9. to convince  
(A) find guilty (B) annoy (C) join (D) persuade
10. to preserve  
(A) protect (B) serve (C) get ready (D) destroy
11. dramatic  
(A) noisy (B) hidden (C) very noticeable (D) very famous
12. economical  
(A) funny (B) thrifty (C) wasteful (D) simple
13. a burden  
(A) sound (B) package (C) detail (D) hardship

2) Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *opposite* in meaning to the word on the left.

14. thorough  
(A) blocked (B) gentle (C) famous (D) careless
15. to bewilder  
(A) confuse (B) make clear to (C) curse (D) bless
16. legible  
(A) not logical (B) slow (C) unclear (D) brief
17. to comprehend  
(A) misunderstand (B) go alone (C) be alike (D) fail
18. frank  
(A) dishonest (B) unknown (C) not reliable (D) unfriendly

19. earnest  
(A) likable (B) insincere (C) unable to earn (D) messy
20. to dispose of  
(A) keep (B) throw away (C) lose (D) find
21. to restore  
(A) remember (B) destroy (C) shop (D) awaken
22. evident  
(A) rare (B) hidden (C) wrong (D) everywhere
23. extravagant  
(A) indoors (B) spending too much (C) thrifty (D) friendly
24. inferior  
(A) outer (B) courageous (C) possible (D) better
25. to deceive  
(A) build (B) tell the truth to (C) cheat (D) go up

**Exercise 241. 1)** Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *same* in meaning as the word on the left.

1. unanimous  
(A) in full agreement (B) not together (C) unhappy (D) pleased
2. to possess  
(A) be lawful (B) lose (C) have (D) disobey
3. to exhaust  
(A) leave (B) use up (C) put out (D) do
4. a procedure  
(A) method (B) protection (C) example (D) reward
5. to assume  
(A) collect (B) deny (C) attend (D) suppose
6. reliable  
(A) well-known (B) related (C) trustworthy (D) trusting

7. the stress  
(A) location (B) tension (C) rule (D) time
8. to deprive of  
(A) suggest to (B) believe (C) disapprove of (D) take away from
9. the vicinity  
(A) sight (B) neighborhood (C) energy (D) possibility
10. an objection to  
(A) goal (B) thing (C) reason against (D) reason
11. a resource  
(A) supply (B) reason (C) goal (D) method
12. to hesitate  
(A) wonder (B) cause (C) delay (D) break
13. an objective  
(A) reason against (B) purpose (C) puzzle (D) supply
- 2) Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *opposite* in meaning to the word on the left.
14. a conflict  
(A) agreement (B) argument (C) gift (D) idea
15. to originate  
(A) end (B) begin (C) remember (D) forget
16. external  
(A) outer (B) inner (C) upper (D) lower
17. to penalize  
(A) admire (B) free (C) reward (D) entertain
18. to vary  
(A) keep the same (B) warm (C) change (D) attack
19. a remedy  
(A) need (B) cure (C) extra (D) poison
20. sufficient  
(A) comfortable (B) organized (C) not enough (D) unimportant

21. current  
(A) electrical      (B) by hand      (C) not attractive      (D) out-of-date
22. incredible  
(A) amazing      (B) believable      (C) not natural      (D) asleep
23. to maintain  
(A) stop      (B) believe      (C) doubt      (D) ignore
24. maximum  
(A) biggest      (B) most      (C) least      (D) hardest
25. to protest  
(A) broadcast      (B) hide      (C) notice      (D) approve of

**Exercise 242. 1)** Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *same* in meaning as the word on the left.

1. to transform  
(A) build      (B) change      (C) make difficult      (D) cross
2. to pursue  
(A) follow      (B) run from      (C) suggest      (D) create
3. to accompany  
(A) avoid      (B) go with      (C) invite      (D) visit
4. to propose  
(A) aim for      (B) ignore      (C) suggest      (D) be proper
5. an emphasis  
(A) special attention      (B) possibility      (C) lack of importance      (D) answer
6. a surplus  
(A) subtraction      (B) extra      (C) a lot      (D) answer
7. to detect  
(A) discover      (B) make      (C) follow      (D) commit a crime
8. a potential  
(A) favorite      (B) possibility      (C) refusal      (D) desire
9. a conscience  
(A) awareness      (B) rule      (C) agreement      (D) moral sense

10. to interpret  
(A) notice (B) explain (C) chase (D) enter
11. a variety  
(A) interest (B) health (C) leftover (D) assortment
12. a challenge  
(A) smth. demanding (B) first choice (C) importance (D) change

13. to counsel  
(A) meet (B) elect (C) give advice to (D) attract

**2)** Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *opposite* in meaning to the word on the left.

14. ultimate  
(A) least (B) greatest (C) oldest (D) unknown
15. establish  
(A) notice (B) recognize (C) hide (D) destroy
16. vague  
(A) clear (B) healthy (C) weak (D) normal
17. peculiar  
(A) serious (B) independent (C) unimportant (D) normal
18. scarce  
(A) helpful (B) common (C) inexpensive (D) clear
19. fertile  
(A) extra (B) main (C) not fruitful (D) most important
20. solitary  
(A) usual (B) incorrect (C) immoral (D) with others
21. principal  
(A) unhappy (B) least important (C) not famous (D) greatest
22. wholesome  
(A) detailed (B) unhealthy (C) not busy (D) forgotten

23. to complicate  
 (A) destroy (B) leave (C) make simple (D) disapprove
24. dependent  
 (A) indirect (B) independent (C) uncommon (D) simple
25. a preference  
 (A) favorite (B) assortment (C) dislike (D) worry

**Exercise 243.** 1) Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *same* in meaning as the word on the left.

1. to exaggerate  
 (A) leave (B) overstate (C) worsen (D) ignore
2. to aggravate  
 (A) get together (B) worsen (C) win (D) expect
3. to demonstrate  
 (A) sell (B) give (C) harm (D) show
4. to analyze  
 (A) study (B) use (C) show (D) entertain
5. a category  
 (A) kindness (B) horror (C) type (D) assortment
6. distinct  
 (A) clear (B) far (C) helpful (D) loud
7. to represent  
 (A) give (B) expect (C) answer (D) be a symbol for
8. a frustration  
 (A) wish (B) disappointment (C) decrease (D) charity
9. to coincide  
 (A) pay (B) overstate (C) get in the way (D) happen together
10. to anticipate  
 (A) battle (B) worsen (C) expect (D) free
11. the frequency  
 (A) power (B) visit (C) victory (D) oftenness

12. to utilize  
(A) study (B) overstate (C) make use of (D) be a symbol for

13. a triumph  
(A) effort (B) success (C) battle (D) loss

2) Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *opposite* in meaning to the word on the left.

14. miserable  
(A) able (B) comfortable (C) expensive (D) small

15. abundant  
(A) found (B) rare (C) faraway (D) unimportant

16. to cease  
(A) lose (B) leave (C) continue (D) find

17. humane  
(A) dead (B) wild (C) cruel (D) alive

18. reluctant  
(A) willing (B) angry (C) active (D) not active

19. considerable  
(A) unkind (B) comfortable (C) small (D) accidental

20. unstable  
(A) steady (B) outdoors (C) cruel (D) pleasant

21. critical  
(A) rare (B) small (C) common (D) approving

22. deliberate  
(A) loud (B) accidental (C) hidden (D) late

23. obnoxious  
(A) pleasant (B) healthy (C) strong (D) pleased

24. intentional  
(A) outward (B) accidental (C) unlikely (D) unclear

25. to linger  
(A) yell (B) stay (C) remain quiet (D) rush away

**Exercise 244. 1)** Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *same* in meaning as the word on the left.

1. to inhabit  
(A) enter (B) live in (C) get used to (D) understand
2. to fulfill  
(A) fill up (B) correct (C) carry out (D) carry
3. to influence  
(A) avoid (B) force (C) please (D) affect
4. to transfer  
(A) avoid (B) move (C) keep (D) answer
5. to occur  
(A) delay (B) surprise (C) happen (D) happen at the same time
6. to revise  
(A) give advice (B) go back (C) change (D) awaken
7. aversion  
(A) rhyme (B) dislike (C) reason (D) form
8. to discipline  
(A) train (B) harm (C) remove (D) affect
9. furthermore  
(A) instead of (B) also (C) because (D) but
10. to resort to  
(A) vacation at (B) sort (C) wonder about (D) make use of
11. an attitude  
(A) outlook (B) height (C) quarrel (D) rule
12. to indicate  
(A) win (B) expect (C) look for (D) point of

13. to respond to  
 (A) know (B) answer (C) believe (D) desire
- 2) Write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the *opposite* in meaning to the word on the left.
14. apparent  
 (A) hidden (B) above (C) under (D) unnatural
15. neutral  
 (A) relaxed (B) taking sides (C) old (D) not enough
16. brutal  
 (A) loyal (B) kind (C) unclear (D) healthy
17. customary  
 (A) hidden (B) unfriendly (C) well-known (D) unusual
18. awkward  
 (A) graceful (B) outward (C) noisy (D) kind
19. a contrast  
 (A) being together (B) similarity (C) disagreement (D) favorite
20. to vanish  
 (A) appear (B) disappear (C) build (D) destroy
21. a dispute  
 (A) disappointment (B) friend (C) hope (D) agreement
22. excessive  
 (A) leftover (B) indoors (C) not enough (D) late
23. to betray  
 (A) leave (B) give (C) get stronger (D) be loyal
24. accustomed to  
 (A) attracted to (B) unaware of (C) aware of (D) not in the habit of
25. fragile  
 (A) tough (B) correct (C) unwrapped (D) graceful

## **49. STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION**

**Test 1.** Choose the correct answer.

1. Arizona \_\_\_ a very dry climate.  
(A) has                      (B) being                      (C) having                      (D) with
2. One of the least effective ways of storing information is learning \_\_\_ it.  
(A) how repeat                      (B) repeating                      (C) to repeat                      (D) repeat
3. Strauss finished \_\_\_ two of his published compositions before his tenth birthday.  
(A) written                      (B) write                      (C) to write                      (D) writing
4. Many modern architects insist on \_\_\_ materials native to the region that will blend into the surrounding landscape.  
(A) use                      (B) to use                      (C) the use                      (D) using
5. Before the Angles and the Saxons \_\_\_ to England, the Iberians had lived there.  
(A) coming                      (B) come                      (C) came                      (D) did come
6. If water is heated to 212 degrees F. \_\_\_ as steam.  
(A) it will boil and escape                      (B) it is boiling and escaping  
(C) it boil and escape                      (D) it would boil and escape
7. According to some historians, if Napoleon had not invaded Russia, he \_\_\_ the rest of Europe.  
(A) had conquered                      (B) would conquer  
(C) would have conquered                      (D) conquered
8. Football teams don't play in the Super Bowl championship \_\_\_ either the National or the American Conference.  
(A) unless they win                      (B) but they win  
(C) unless they will win                      (D) But to have won
9. Less moderate members of Congress are insisting that changes in the social security system \_\_\_ made.  
(A) will                      (B) are                      (C) being                      (D) be
10. It is necessary \_\_\_ the approaches to a bridge, the road design, and the alignment in such a way as to best accommodate the expected traffic flow over and under it.  
(A) plan                      (B) to plan                      (C) planning                      (D) The plan

11. In the stringed instruments, the tones \_\_\_ by playing a bow across a set of strings that may be made of wire or gut.  
(A) they produce (B) producing (C) are produced (D) that are producing
12. \_\_\_ Giant Ape Man, our biggest and probably one of our first human ancestors, was about the size of a male gorilla.  
(A) It is believed that (B) That it is  
(C) That is believed (D) That believing
13. By the twenty-first century, the computer \_\_\_ a necessity in every home.  
(A) became (B) becoming (C) has become (D) will have become
14. The giraffe survives in part because it \_\_\_ the vegetation in the high branches of trees where other animals have not grazed.  
(A) to reach (B) can reach (C) reaching (D) reach
15. Hydrogen peroxide \_\_\_ as a bleaching agent because it effectively whitens a variety of fibers and surfaces.  
(A) used (B) is used (C) is using (D) that is uses
16. Since the earth's crust is much thicker under the continents, equipment would have to be capable of drilling through 100 000 feet of rock to investigate the mantle \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) beneath them (B) beneath their (C) beneath its (D) beneath they
17. Charlie Chaplin was a comedian \_\_\_ was best known for his work in silent movies.  
(A) who (B) which (C) whose (D) What
18. A desert receives less than twenty-five \_\_\_ of rainfall every year.  
(A) centimeter (B) a centimeter (C) centimeters (D) of centimeters
19. \_\_\_ at 212 degrees F. and freezes at 32 degrees F.  
(A) waters boils (B) The water boils (C) Water boils (D) Waters boil
20. It is generally believed that an M. (B) A. Degree is good preparation for a career in \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) a business (B) business (C) businesses (D) one business
21. Fire-resistant materials are used to retard \_\_\_ of modern aircraft in case of accidents.  
(A) a damage to the passenger cabin (B) that damages to the passenger cabin  
(C) damage to the passenger cabin (D) passenger cabin's damages

22. Hybrids have one more \_\_\_ per plant than the other varieties.  
 (A) corns (B) ear of corn (C) corn ears (D) corn's ears
23. \_\_\_ trees is a custom that many people engage in to celebrate Arbor day.  
 (A) The plant (B) Plant (C) Planting (D) To planting
24. \_\_\_ migrate long distances is well documented.  
 (A) That it is birds (B) That birds (C) Birds that (D) it is that birds
25. At Woolworth's first five-and-ten-cent store, \_\_\_ more than a dime.  
 (A) neither items cost (B) items not cost  
 (C) items non costing (D) no item cost
26. \_\_\_ fuel that is used today is a chemical form of solar energy.  
 (A) Most of (B) The most (C) Most (D) Almost the
27. \_\_\_ is cheaper for students who maintain aB average because they are a better risk than average or below-average students.  
 (A) Automobile's insurance (B) Insurance of automobiles  
 (C) Automobile insurance (D) Insurance automobile
28. The Canterbury Tales, written about 1386, is as alive and \_\_\_ today as it was nearly 600 years ago.  
 (A) appealed (B) appeal (C) appealing (D) the appeal of
29. Oil paints are \_\_\_ they have become the most popular painter's colors.  
 (A) so versatile and durable that (B) so versatile and durable than  
 (C) such versatile and durable as (D) such versatile and durable
30. Although we often use "speed" and "velocity" interchangeably, in a technical sense, "speed" is not always \_\_\_ "velocity".  
 (A) alike (B) the same as (C) similar (D) as

**Test 2.** Choose the correct answer.

1. Although they are smaller, chipmunks are \_\_\_ most other ground squirrels.  
 (A) like to (B) like as (C) like (D) alike
2. After the purchase of the Louisiana Territory, the United States had \_\_\_ it had previously owned.  
 (A) twice more land than (B) two times more lad as  
 (C) twice as much land as (D) two times much land than
3. In the Great Smoky Mountains, one can see \_\_\_ 150 different kinds of trees.

- (A) more than      (B) as much as      (C) up as      (D) as many to
4. It has been estimated that \_\_\_ one hundred thousand men participated in the gold rush of 1898.  
 (A) approximate      (B) until      (C) as many as      (D) more
5. \_\_\_ apples are grown in Washington State.  
 (A) Best      (B) The most good      (C) The best      (D) The better
6. It is generally true that the lower the stock market falls, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) higher the price of gold rises      (B) the price of gold rises high  
 (C) the higher the price of gold rises      (D) rises high the price of gold
7. \_\_\_ in the cultivation of a forest, trees need more careful planning than any other crop does.  
 (A) Because the time and area involved  
 (B) For the time and area involving  
 (C) Because of the time and area involved  
 (D) As a cause of the time and area involved
8. Amniocentesis can be used not only to diagnose fetal disorders \_\_\_ the sex of the unborn child with 95 percent accuracy.  
 (A) but determining      (B) but also determining  
 (C) but to determine      (D) but also to determine
9. Bacterial spores germinate and sprout \_\_\_ favorable conditions of temperature and food supply.  
 (A) when encountering of      (B) when they encounter  
 (C) when they will encounter      (D) when the encounter of
10. Recently, there have been several outbreaks of disease like legionnaire's syndrome, and doctors don't know \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) what is the cause      (B) the cause is what  
 (C) is what the cause      (D) what the cause is
11. Not until the Triassic Period \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) the first primitive mammals did develop  
 (B) did the first primitive mammals develop  
 (C) did develop the first primitive mammals  
 (D) the first primitive mammals develop
12. Penguins, the post highly specialized of all aquatic birds, may live \_\_\_ twenty years.  
 (A) before      (B) since      (C) for      (D) from
13. \_\_\_ the Gulf Stream is warmer than the ocean water surrounding it.

(A) Wholly      (B) Whole      (C) As a whole      (D) A whole as

14. Of all the cities in Texas, \_\_\_\_.

- (A) that San Antonio is probably the most picturesque
- (B) San Antonio is probably the most picturesque
- (C) probably San Antonio the most picturesque
- (D) the most picturesque probably that San Antonio

15. Most beekeepers have observed \_\_\_\_ at the approach of a thunderstorm.

- (A) enraging the bees      (B) that bees become enraged
- (C) that bees enraging      (D) become enraged the bees

16. The first transistor was basically a small chip made of germanium onto one surface of which two pointed wire contacts \_\_\_\_ side by side.

- (A) are made      (B) made      (C) were made      (D) making

17. Iron \_\_\_\_ for weapons and tools in the Bronze Age following the Stone Age.

- (A) is generally used      (B) generally used
- (C) was generally used      (D) used generally

18. Groups of tissues, each with its own function, \_\_\_\_ in the human body.

- (A) it makes up the organs      (B) make up the organs
- (C) they make up the organs      (D) makes up the organs

19. Cupid, one of the ancient Roman gods, \_\_\_\_.

- (A) were a little winged child
- (B) representing as a little winged child
- (C) was represented as a little winged child
- (D) a little winged child

20. In a suspension bridge \_\_\_\_ that carry one or more flexible cables firmly attached at each end.

- (A) there are two towers on it      (B) there are two towers
- (C) two towers there are      (D) towers there are two

21. A college bookstore that sells used textbooks stocks \_\_\_\_ along with the new ones on the shelf under the course title.

- (A) its      (B) their      (C) a      (D) them

22. The television programs we allow \_\_\_\_ to watch influence their learning.

- (A) a children      (B) our children      (C) our child      (D) their child

23. In a hot, sunny climate man acclimatizes by eating less, drinking more liquids, wearing lighter clothing, and \_\_\_\_ .  
 (A) skin changes that darken (B) his skin may darken  
 (C) experiencing a darkening of the skin (D) darkens his skin
23. Both historically and \_\_\_\_, Ontario is the heartland of Canada.  
 (A) in its geography (B) geographically (C) also its geography (D) geography
25. Waitresses and waiters who serve \_\_\_\_ deserve at least a 20 percent tip.  
 (A) in a courteous manner (B) courteously  
 (C) with courtesy in their manner (D) courteous
26. The average elevation of the Himalayas is twenty thousand feet, and Mount Everest \_\_\_\_ to more than twenty-nine thousand feet at its apex.  
 (A) raises (B) rises (C) roses (D) arises
27. When Jacqueline Kennedy was first lady, she collected many beautiful antiques and \_\_\_\_ them among the original pieces in the White House.  
 (A) sat (B) set (C) sit (D) sits
28. The president usually \_\_\_\_ unless his press secretary approves it.  
 (A) doesn't do a statement (B) doesn't make a statement  
 (C) doesn't statement (D) no statement
29. \_\_\_\_ discovery of insulin, it was not possible to treat diabetes.  
 (A) Prior to the (B) Prior (C) The prior (D) To prior
30. Unless protected areas are established, the Bengal tiger, the blue whale, and the California condor face \_\_\_\_ of extinction.  
 (A) possible (B) the possibility (C) to be possible (D) possibly

## PART V: IDIOMS

**Exercise 1.** Choose the best answer.

1. If you're up to your ears with homework, you \_\_\_\_ .  
 (A) don't have much to do  
 (B) have a lot to do  
 (C) can't wait to get started

2. If your teacher has told you it is out of the question for you to turn in your term paper late, you \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) must turn in your paper on time
  - (B) have extra time to work on your paper
  - (C) don't have any more questions to ask your teacher
3. If Johannes finally got rid of his old football, he \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) is saving it for the future
  - (B) no longer has it
  - (C) loaned it to a friend for a short time
4. If Mai was the one who got the ball rolling on your group science project, she \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) put off working on the project
  - (B) rolled a ball around as part of the project
  - (C) started work on the project
5. If you gave your neighbor a hand with her groceries, you \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) helped her
  - (B) avoided her
  - (C) shook hands with her
6. Stanley used a bit of wire to fix his car door for the time being. Stanley \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) permanently fixed the car door
  - (B) temporarily fixed the car door
  - (C) didn't know how to fix the car door
7. Carl and Monica are keeping their fingers crossed that the weather will be nice on their wedding day. They \_\_\_\_ .
  - (A) are wishing for nice weather
  - (B) have been told the weather will be nice
  - (C) don't really care about the weather

**Exercise 2.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list.

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>1. once in a blue moon</i>    | <i>6. do without</i>     |
| <i>2. come down with</i>         | <i>7. say that again</i> |
| <i>3. be on the safe side</i>    | <i>8. every other</i>    |
| <i>4. well worth the trouble</i> | <i>9. inns and outs</i>  |
| <i>5. under the weather</i>      | <i>10. as a rule</i>     |

1. Although it's warm today, I think you should take a sweater, just to \_\_\_\_ .
2. A: What do you usually do on weekends, Fred?

- B: \_\_\_ I stay at home, but next weekend I'm going to San Francisco with a friend.
3. I forgot my notebook for class but I think I can \_\_\_ it.
4. A: You're looking a bit tired today.  
B: Well, I think I'm \_\_\_ the flu.
5. I don't have physics every day. I have it \_\_\_ day.
6. Reynaldo is an excellent tour guide because he knows all \_\_\_ of travelling.
7. Since Alberto does not like the ballet we only go \_\_\_ .
8. A: The weather is absolutely perfect today.  
B: You can \_\_\_!
9. I'm sorry I won't be able to go to the art exhibit with you tonight, I'm feeling \_\_\_ .
10. A: Did you have a hard time finding grandmother's birthday present?  
B: Yes, but when I saw her expression when she opened it, I knew it was \_\_\_ .

**Exercise 3.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list.

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>1. as a rule</i>           | <i>6. come up with</i>         |
| <i>2. get in touch with</i>   | <i>7. a fish out of water</i>  |
| <i>3. come up with</i>        | <i>8. at all</i>               |
| <i>4. Think nothing of it</i> | <i>9. as a matter of fact</i>  |
| <i>5. get rid of</i>          | <i>10. few and far between</i> |

1. A: Thank you so much for helping me get my car started.  
B: \_\_\_ . It was no problem at all.
2. A: Do you get pay raises where you work?  
B: Yes, but they are \_\_\_ .
3. Michael felt like \_\_\_ because he was the only man in a room full of women.
4. A: I've got a great idea for our class reunion.  
B: I knew you'd \_\_\_ something.
5. A: Is this story boring you?  
B: Not \_\_\_ . I find it fascinating.
6. \_\_\_, Carlos is very punctual, but he was late tonight.

7. A: You're probably too tired to play another game of racquetball, right?  
B: I'm not that tired, really. \_\_, I'd enjoy another game.
8. How did you \_\_ such a strange idea?
9. A: That old paint that you have stored in your garage is a fire hazard.  
B: You're right. I should \_\_ it.
10. A: Has Fred \_\_ you lately?  
B: No, he hasn't. I don't think he has my new telephone number.

**Exercise 4.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>1. right away</i>          | <i>6. make a point of</i>    |
| <i>2. give a hand with</i>    | <i>7. take it easy</i>       |
| <i>3. out of the question</i> | <i>8. for the time being</i> |
| <i>4. make up one's mind</i>  | <i>9. in the long run</i>    |
| <i>5. few and far between</i> | <i>10. for good</i>          |

1. There are so many interesting dishes on the menu that it's hard for me to \_\_ which one I want.
2. A: I'm nervous about my interview.  
B: \_\_. You'll make a better impression if you're relaxed.
3. A: Why do we need to get gas now? We have quite a bit left.  
B: This highway goes through some empty country, and gas stations are \_\_.
4. A: Are you moving to Baltimore \_\_?  
B: No, just \_\_. I'll be back here in a month or two.
5. Can you \_\_ me \_\_ this luggage? It's too heavy for me to carry myself.
6. The company may lose some money now, but \_\_, this is a good investment.
7. Write down your ideas \_\_. If you wait to write them down, you may forget them.
8. A: You did a fine job on this research paper, especially on the bibliography.  
B: Thanks. I \_\_ getting the bibliography exactly right.
9. A: What did Professor Spencer say when you asked him if the final exam could be postponed?  
B: He said that it was \_\_ because there's no time to reschedule the test.

**Exercise 5.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list. Change the verb to the correct tense when necessary.

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>watch out</i>  | 6. <i>pick out</i>   |
| 2. <i>look after</i> | 7. <i>keep on</i>    |
| 3. <i>put off</i>    | 8. <i>try out</i>    |
| 4. <i>count on</i>   | 9. <i>look into</i>  |
| 5. <i>run into</i>   | 10. <i>talk over</i> |

1. I \_\_\_ Caroline in the coffee shop.
2. \_\_\_ for snakes!
3. A: Who \_\_\_ that tie for you?  
B: No one. I chose it myself.
4. A: What are you going to do about your tropical fish while you're out of town?  
B: I've asked my sister to \_\_\_ them for me.
5. A: Should we stop and spend the night at this motel?  
B: No, let's \_\_\_ driving for a few more miles.
6. The police are \_\_\_ the crime.
7. The couple had to \_\_\_ the wedding because the bride was sick.
8. I wish I'd \_\_\_ this calculator before I bought it. It doesn't seem to be working.
9. I'm not sure if this is a suitable topic for a research paper. I need to \_\_\_ it \_\_\_ with my teacher before I start writing.
10. Can you \_\_\_ the students?

**Exercise 6.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list. Change the verb to the correct tense when necessary.

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>care for</i>    | 6. <i>count on</i>   |
| 2. <i>find out</i>    | 7. <i>look after</i> |
| 3. <i>hold up</i>     | 8. <i>call on</i>    |
| 4. <i>bring up</i>    | 9. <i>figure out</i> |
| 5. <i>drop out of</i> | 10. <i>check out</i> |

1. They \_\_\_ their children to be honest.

2. I can \_\_\_ my car. It's very dependable and never breaks down.
3. A: Did you rent this videotape?  
B: No, I \_\_\_ it \_\_\_ the library.
4. That saleswoman \_\_\_ her clients at least once a month because she thinks personal contact is important.
5. Who \_\_\_ your cat while you were out of town?
6. It took me hours to \_\_\_ how to record programs on my VCR.
7. Ben had to \_\_\_ the university because of financial problems.
8. A: How did you \_\_\_ where Warren lives?  
B: I just looked up his address in the phone book.
9. Albert \_\_\_ his grandfather.
10. A: What \_\_\_ your flight?  
B: There was a big snowstorm in Denver that delayed a lot of flights.

**Exercise 7.** Complete the sentences or dialogues with idioms from the list. Change the verb to the correct tense when necessary.

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| <b>1. watch out</b> | <b>6. count on</b>     |
| <b>2. care of</b>   | <b>7. look after</b>   |
| <b>3. hold on</b>   | <b>8. run into</b>     |
| <b>4. pick out</b>  | <b>9. figure out</b>   |
| <b>5. turn in</b>   | <b>10. get through</b> |

1. Marcia's sister \_\_\_ her baby while Marcia is at work.
2. I asked my teacher to \_\_\_ the mistakes that I made in my essay so that I could correct them.
3. I \_\_\_ my old friend Leslie downtown yesterday. I hadn't seen her for months.
4. If you're on a crowded bus or subway car, you must \_\_\_ for pickpockets.
5. I'll never be able to \_\_\_ all these books on Professor Grey's reading list.
6. The wind is starting to blow. You'd better \_\_\_ to your hat.
7. Lucy doesn't \_\_\_ sweets. Why don't you get her a basket of fruit?
8. A: Do you happen to have a red notebook and an umbrella here?

- B: No, but why don't you give me your phone number in case someone \_\_ them \_\_?
9. A: Are you coming to my party tomorrow?  
B: Yes, you can \_\_ me.
10. Roberto, could you help me, please? I can't \_\_ how to put my little sister's new bicycle together.

**Exercise 8.** Choose the best meaning.

1. Steve asked for more than he could eat. His eyes **were bigger than his stomach**  
(A) Steve thought he could eat a lot.  
(B) Steve did not think he could eat much.
2. Eric became so upset that he **lost control of himself**.  
(A) Eric was rational.  
(B) Eric was irrational.
3. Stan consumes too many alcoholic beverages. He **drinks like a fish**.  
(A) Stan spends a lot of time in bars.  
(B) Stan dislikes bars.
4. Daniel eats more than anybody else I know. He **eats like a horse**.  
(A) Daniel does not spend a lot of money on food.  
(B) Daniel spends a lot of money on food.
5. Polly did too many things and got overtired. She **burned herself out**.  
(A) Polly works hard.  
(B) Polly does not like to work.
6. Ken talked and talked, but he did not change Gene's mind. He **talked until he was blue in the face**.  
(A) Ken did not convince Gene.  
(B) Gene agreed with ken.
7. Helen ate too much. She **made a pig out of herself**.  
(A) It was enjoyable to watch Helen eat.  
(B) It was not enjoyable to watch Helen eat.
8. Brian is reading a newspaper under a tree in the park. Brian is **taking it easy**.  
(A) Brian is relaxing.  
(B) Brian is hard at work.

9. I **gather from** your remark that you are angry.  
(A) hear  
(B) understand from  
(C) ignore
10. **To tell you the truth**, we're starving.  
(A) to be honest  
(B) to explain why  
(C) in other words
11. Oh, **come on**, Michael, we know you're over thirty!  
(A) stop saying something that isn't true  
(B) hurry  
(C) come with us
12. She didn't want to go to the party as she **made up** a good excuse.  
(A) asked for  
(B) wrote  
(C) invented
13. During the press conference, the President **touched on** the unemployment problem.  
(A) discussed fully  
(B) discussed briefly  
(C) avoided
14. He wanted to buy a Cadillac but his son **talked him into** buying a Porsche.  
(A) convinced  
(B) asked  
(C) told
15. He **made a deal with** his client.  
(A) discussed it with  
(B) agreed to do business with  
(C) produced something with
16. After a few minutes of social talk, we **got down to business**.  
(A) sat down  
(B) talked about our jobs  
(C) began to talk seriously

17. It was impossible for him **to make a living** by acting.  
(A) support himself financially by  
(B) live without  
(C) have an interesting life by
18. As a salesman, he had **to deal with** the public.  
(A) have contact with  
(B) play cards with  
(C) convince
19. When I was cleaning out my desk drawer, I **came across** this old picture.  
(A) looked for  
(B) found  
(C) ripped
20. Everything in this kitchen **is up to date**.  
(A) is old  
(B) is used  
(C) is modern

**Exercise 9.** Choose the best meaning.

1. If you **get rid of** these doors, you will have much more room.  
(A) open  
(B) remove  
(C) close
2. The robbers **broke in**.  
(A) needed money  
(B) got hurt  
(C) forced their way in
3. He **put the blame** on Perry.  
(A) forgave  
(B) accused  
(C) attacked
4. The young salesman **came up with** a money-saving idea.  
(A) bought  
(B) exchanged  
(C) found

5. Everyone was surprised when the president **showed up** in blue jeans.  
(A) bought  
(B) displayed  
(C) appeared wearing
6. He quit his job because he couldn't **cope with** all the pressure.  
(A) overcome  
(B) avoid  
(C) enjoy
7. We're **fed up with** the weather here.  
(A) enjoying  
(B) tired of  
(C) pleased with
8. It's better not to talk to him. He **got out of bed on the wrong side** this morning.  
(A) was in a bad mood when he went to sleep  
(B) hurt himself when he got up  
(C) has been in a bad mood since he got up
9. I don't **feel like** going out in the rain. Let's stay home.  
(A) want to  
(B) feel well enough to  
(C) enjoy
10. If you don't **cut out** smoking three packs of cigarettes a day, you will die before you are fifty.  
(A) think about  
(B) stop  
(C) limit yourself to
11. The cleaning lady **objected to** washing windows.  
(A) avoided  
(B) liked  
(C) expressed a negative attitude about
12. If you want to discuss the matter, you must **calm down** first.  
(A) become quiet, more relaxed  
(B) make an appointment  
(C) explain your position

13. The bus **passes by** her house every fifteen minutes.  
(A) goes near  
(B) goes past  
(C) stops at
14. We should **fill up** the trunk before we reach the highway.  
(A) make completely full  
(B) fix  
(C) put a little gas in
15. **Take it easy**, dinner will be ready in a few minutes.  
(A) hurry  
(B) relax, be calm  
(C) come here
16. It was her first trip to Rome so she got a tour guide **to show her around**.  
(A) take on a tour  
(B) translate for  
(C) introduce to people
17. Speaking to reporters **is against** the president's wishes.  
(A) is contrary to  
(B) is in agreement  
(C) goes with
18. Her father isn't **looking forward** to his retirement.  
(A) thinking about with pleasure  
(B) planning  
(C) concerned about
19. We're **leaving for** Las Vegas tomorrow.  
(A) travelling to  
(B) going away from  
(C) immigrating to

**Exercise 10.** Choose the best meaning.

**1. Break a leg!**

- (A) To hell with you!  
(B) Good luck!

*"Break a leg!" shouted the stage manager to the young actresses.  
Let's all go do our best. Break a leg!*

**2. Blow on it!**

(A) Cool it! Take it easy!

(B) Do it! Act more aggressively!

*It's all right, Tom. Blow on it!*

*Hey, man. Relax. Blow on it!*

**3. Make it snappy!**

(A) Hurry up! Make it fast!

(B) Do you best!

*We are late, honey. Make it snappy!*

*Make it snappy, Fred. They won't wait for us.*

**4. Keep your pants (or your shirt) on!**

(A) Mind your own business!

(B) Wait a minute!

*I'll be right with you. Keep your shirt on!*

*Keep your pants on! You are next.*

**5. Drop it!**

(A) Forget it!

(B) Stop acting like this!

*Never mind! Just drop it!*

*Drop it! I should never have brought it up.*

**6. No sweat!**

(A) It's too bad!

(B) No problem!

*It's no big deal. No sweat!*

*No sweat! Don't worry about it.*

**7. Make a lap!**

(A) Sit down!

(B) Get out of the way!

*Hey, make a lap and relax!*

*Pull up a chair and make a lap!*

**8. Come off it!**

(A) give up your point of view; it's incorrect!

(B) Stop doing things like this!

*Come off it! You're deadly wrong, and you know you are!*

*You are arguing from a foolish position. Come off it!*

**9. Dig up!**

(A) Stand up and go away!

(B) Listen! Pay attention!

*Stop talking and dig up!*

*Dig up, buddy! This is important.*

**10. You bet your boots!**

(A) That's your mistake!

(B) You can be absolutely certain!

*You bet your boots I'm mad!*

*Am I happy? You bet your boots!*

**11. Hold it!**

(A) Remember it!

(B) Stop right there!

*Hold it! Stop!*

*That's enough! Hold it!*

**12. That's the way to go! or Way to go!**

(A) Nicely done!

(B) Go away! Get lost!

*That's the -way to go! You did it, pal!*

*Way to go, Bob! Everything's been fine!*

**13. What's the good word?**

(A) It can't be that bad! Is there any solution?

(B) Hello, how are you?

*Morning, Lane! What's the good word?*

*Long time no see, boys! What's the good-word?*

**14. My foot!**

(A) I can't wait! Hurry up!

(B) I do not believe it!

*You are the best in the team, my foot!*

*She is going to marry you? My foot!*

**15. That's the ticket!**

(A) That's exactly what is needed!

(B) That's the heart of the problem!

*Good! That's the ticket! Now you don't have to worry.*

*That's the ticket! Perfect! Go ahead!*

**16. Nothing to it!**

(A) It's so easy!

(B) Nothing doing! No way to settle a matter!

*Look, anybody can do it! Nothing to it!*

*Operating fax machine is easy. nothing to it!*

**17. That does it!**

(A) Well done, that's the solution!

(B) That's the end! That is too much!

*Okey! That does it! I can't take any more. Out you go!*

*Stop it! Hat does it! I'm leaving.*

**18. Bully for you!**

(A) Shame on you!

(B) Very good for you!

*You managed it, somehow! Bully on you!*

*You're the winner! Bully for you!*

**19. Don't sweat it!**

(A) Say it as it is, don't make things look better than they are.

(B) Don't worry about it!

*No problem! Don't sweat it!*

*Don't sweat it! We'll see to the problem.*

**20. Nuts to you!**

(A) Stop it! Go away!

(B) That's great of you!

*Oh, nuts to you! You are just plain rude!*

*Nuts to you! I will not give you the thing.*

**Exercise 11.** Choose the best meaning.

**1. legal-eagle**

(A) a policeman

(B) a lawyer

(C) a pilot

*I've got a legal-eagle who can get me out of this scrape.*

*She keeps a whole bunch of legal-eagle.*

2. super-duper

- (A) excellent
- (B) stupid
- (C) the worst

*Where is this super-duper car of y ours?*

*That's just super-duper. Couldn't have asked for better.*

3. fender-bender

- (A) a minor accident
- (B) a very strong man
- (C) a lazy person

*There are a couple offender-benders on the expressway this morning, so be careful*

*A minor fender-bender blocked traffic for a while.*

4. pie-in-the-sky

- (A) a special "Heavenly reward"
- (B) something non-existent
- (C) absolute nonsense

*Don't hold out for pie-in-the-sky. Get realistic.*

*If he didn't hope for some heavenly pie-in-the-sky, he would probably be a real crook.*

5. big league (usually plural)

- (A) the government
- (B) the top of the criminal world
- (C) any situation where competition is keen

*In the big leagues of business you've got to know what you are worth.*

*You're in the big leagues now - no more fooling around*

6. local yokel

- (A) the nearest bar
- (B) a police station
- (C) a local resident of the rural place

*One of the local yokels helped me change the tire*

*The local yokels all listen to the same radio station.*

7. to wheel and deal

- (A) to treat someone badly
- (B) to negotiate aggressively
- (C) to sell second-hand cars

*To settle the matter you must wheel and deal.*

*If you can't wheel and deal, you can't run for the elective office.*

8. ptomaine-domain

- (A) any dining facility, a cafeteria
- (B) a hospital for mental clients
- (C) a village

*Time to go over to the ptomaine-domain.*

*I can't stand food at the ptomaine-domain.*

9. boob-tube

- (A) subway
- (B) a television set
- (C) an underground passage

*You spend too much time in front of the boob-tube.*

*What's on the boob-tube tonight?*

10. to party-hearty

- (A) to love someone passionately
- (B) to take one's leave
- (C) to have a great time, to celebrate

*Let's get some stuff and party-hearty.*

*The whole class decided to celebrate and party-hearty.*

11. donkey's years

- (A) childhood
- (B) a long time
- (C) years spent in the army

*I haven't seen you in donkey's years...*

*It's been donkey's years since we talked.*

12. hot potato

- (A) a difficult problem
- (B) a thing difficult to get
- (C) a very attractive and energetic woman or girl

*I sure don't want to have to deal with that hot potato.*

*This task is a hot potato. Ignore it for a while.*

13. monkey business

- (A) useless efforts
- (B) silliness; dishonest tricks
- (C) an unsuccessful undertaking or enterprise

*That's enough monkey business. Now, settle down.*

*Stop the monkey business. This is serious!*

14. white hat

- (A) a bureaucrat
- (B) a very important person
- (C) a good guy, a hero

*He seems like a white hat, but he is a worm. The white hats don't always win, you know.*

15. baby-kisser

- (A) a hypocritical person
- (B) a parent
- (C) a politician

*Once those baby-kissers get in the office, they spend, spend, spend...*

*There were lots of promises at the town square today when four baby-kissers tried to rally interest in the upcoming election.*

16. mad money

- (A) money to be spent in frivolous fashion
- (B) a very large sum of money
- (C) easily gotten money

*I got \$100 in mad money for my birthday.*

*This is my mad money, and I'll do with it as I please.*

17. big drink

- (A) a drunkard
- (B) an ocean
- (C) a party of male students

*We flew over the big drink in an hour or two. When you are over the big drink you really get o feel how tiny we humans are.*

18. white elephant

- (A) a boss
- (B) a prominent politician
- (C) a useless or unwanted object

*Take all those white elephants to the flea market. How can I get rid of this white elephant.*

**Exercise 12.** Choose the best meaning.

1. To be in fine feather.

- (A) To look elegant.
- (B) To look fresh and healthy.
- (C) To be rich.

2. As cool as a cucumber.
  - (A) To be very reserved towards others.
  - (B) To be very strong.
  - (C) To be very calm in any situation.
3. You can't judge a book by its cover.
  - (A) You can't judge someone by his or her appearance.
  - (B) You can't judge someone objectively if you know him or her.
  - (C) It's difficult to say if the book is nice or not.
4. Bite the bullet.
  - (A) Eat something hard.
  - (B) Suffer bravely something very unpleasant.
  - (C) Stop something before it does you any harm.
5. To be in the soup.
  - (A) To be in trouble.
  - (B) To be in bad company.
  - (C) To be in bad health.
6. To be on pins and needles.
  - (A) Something that is very painful to you.
  - (B) To be very nervous.
  - (C) To feel very light and happy.
7. To be long in the tooth.
  - (A) To be very hungry.
  - (B) To have a long tooth.
  - (C) To be too old.
8. To spill the beans.
  - (A) To tell a secret too soon.
  - (B) To tell a lie to somebody.
  - (C) To make a mistake.
9. In a nutshell.
  - (A) In a small room.
  - (B) In a protective place
  - (C) In a few words.

10. foot-in-mouth disease

- (A) tendency to say the wrong thing at the wrong time
- (B) inclination to boast incessantly
- (C) dental problems

*I suffer a lot from foot-in-mouth disease.*

*Well, Ralph has foot-in-mouth disease again.*

11. to have egg on one's face

- (A) to be extremely shy
- (B) to be embarrassed by something one has done
- (C) to get drunk heavily

*She's really got egg on her face. I was completely wrong, and now I have egg on my face.*

12. headache department

- (A) a hospital
- (B) a person who habitually causes problems
- (C) the central government

*Here's another letter from the headache department.*

*Mrs. Wilson is my least favorite headache department.*

13. nutty as a fruitcake

- (A) very silly or stupid
- (B) something nonexistent
- (C) excellent in taste

*The whole idea is as nutty as a fruitcake. Tom is as nutty as a fruitcake.*

*They will put him in a nuttery someday.*

14. cruising for a bruising

- (A) working very hard but with little result
- (B) asking for trouble
- (C) to work as a sales agent

*Who's cruising for a bruising?*

*You are cruising for a bruising, you know that?*

15. to talk turkey

- (A) to speak carelessly
- (B) to tell lies
- (C) to talk serious business

*We've got to sit down and talk turkey.*

*It's time to talk turkey and quit messing around.*

16. to have kittens

(A) to become enraged and/or greatly surprised

(B) to live a pleasant life

(C) to have minor problems

*When I heard the news, I had kittens.*

*I almost had kittens, I was so mad.*

17. dog and pony show

(A) something very childish

(B) a beauty contest

(C) a demonstration, a speech, or other presentation that is presented often

*Wally was there with his dog and pony show about water safety.*

*I've seen that dog and pony show so many times; it's like I know all the words.*

18. to put the bite on someone

(A) to try to get money out of someone

(B) to kill or injure someone

(C) to get angry with someone

*You're already putting the bite on me for a few bucks. Go away.*

*Don't put the bite on me. I've no money at all.*

19. to play ball with someone

(A) to treat someone not seriously

(B) to cooperate with someone

(C) to try to deceive someone

*Are you going to play ball, or do I have report you to the boss? You will be better off if you will play ball with me.*

**Exercise 13.** Can you complete each sentence in the list with the appropriate phrase from the second?

1. The telephone operator put through

2. I have put by

3. She was dreadfully put out

4. If it rains we shall have to put off

5. How can you put up with

6. George has put out

7. I must put down

8. We would be happy to put you up

9. We put his failure down to

10. If cigarettes are put up

11. Older children are often put upon

A. lack of hard works

B. by their younger brothers and sisters

C. his shoulder, playing Rugby

D. enough money for a winter holiday

E. your address before I forget it

F. the barbecue in the garden tonight

G. the noise and fumes of town life

H. I shall stop smoking

I. by his unkind remarks

J. if you would like to stay the night

K. a warm jumper and heavy coat

12. When he began to shiver he decided to put on L. the call from London

**Exercise 14.** Here are some idiomatic expressions which can make everyday English puzzling to foreigners. Each has one word missing. Choose from the three given below to complete the sentence.

1. He is like a bear with a sore \_\_\_\_.  
(A) nose                      (B). head                      (C) tooth
2. When he began to smile I knew he was pulling my \_\_\_\_.  
(A) arm                      (B) leg                      (C) ear
3. I am so hungry after my walk I could eat a \_\_\_\_.  
(A) elephant                      (B) house                      (C) horse
4. He had to \_\_\_\_ up his Russian before he visited Moscow.  
(A) sweep                      (B) wash                      (C) brush
5. Last night I was so tired I slept like a \_\_\_\_.  
(A) dog                      (B) log                      (C) table
6. She has a \_\_\_\_ in her bonnet about young people.  
(A) ribbon                      (B) feather                      (C) bee
7. He is a \_\_\_\_ of all trades.  
(A) jack                      (B) workman                      (C) artist
8. The horror film on late-night television made my flesh \_\_\_\_.  
(A) jump                      (B) crawl                      (C) creep
9. His name was on the \_\_\_\_ of my tongue.  
(A) edge                      (B) tip                      (C) top
10. I am sick and \_\_\_\_ of hearing the subject.  
(A) tired                      (B) angry                      (C) sorry
11. He always calls a spade a \_\_\_\_.  
(A) fork                      (B) hoe                      (C) spade
12. He always keeps his \_\_\_\_ in an emergency.  
(A) head                      (B) feet                      (C) shirt

**Exercise 15.** Choose the best meaning.

1. I've **got a frog in my throat**.
  - (A) I keep having to clear my throat.
  - (B) I've got a sore throat.
  - (C) Something I've eaten is stuck in my throat.
  
2. Mary's **got butterflies in her stomach**.
  - (A) She's feeling nervous.
  - (B) She's got indigestion.
  - (C) She feels sick.
  
3. His vase is rather **a white elephant**.
  - (A) It's old and very valuable.
  - (B) Even though it was probably quite expensive, it's useless.
  - (C) It's big and simple to design.
  
3. He **chickened out** of climbing the tree.
  - (A) He refused to climb the tree.
  - (B) He apologized for not being able to climb the tree.
  - (C) He decided not to climb the tree after all, because he was afraid to.
  
4. David drives **at a snail's pace**.
  - (A) David drives very carefully.
  - (B) David drives very slowly.
  - (C) David drives in the middle of the road.
  
6. There's something **fishy about him**.
  - (A) He smells.
  - (B) He likes swimming.
  - (C) There's something about him that I don't entirely trust.
  
7. You **look sheepish!**
  - (A) You look terrified.
  - (B) You look ashamed of yourself.
  - (C) You look warm.
  
8. The little girl **shed a few crocodile tears**.
  - (A) She shed very big tears.
  - (B) Her tears were not real tears of sorrow.
  - (C) She was crying because she was angry.

9. I haven't been to the cinema **for donkey's years**.
- (A) I haven't been to the cinema for a few years.
  - (B) I haven't been to the cinema for many years.
  - (C) I haven't been to the cinema for ages.
10. Jane thinks she's **the cat's whiskers**.
- (A) Jane's too self-important.
  - (B) Jane's shy.
  - (C) Jane's mad.

## Answer Keys

### Ex.1

1. 10; 2. 7; 3. 8; 4. 12; 5. 1; 6. 5; 7. 9; 8. 11; 9. 2; 10. 6; 11. 3; 12. 4

### Ex.2

1. 5; 2. 10; 3. 7; 4. 12; 5. 9; 6. 4; 7. 8; 8. 6; 9. 11; 10. 1; 11. 2; 12. 3

### Ex.5

1. C 2. N 3. C 4. N 5. C 6. N 7. N 8. C 9. N 10. N 11. C 12. N 13. N  
14. N 15. C 16. N

### Ex. 6

2. decisions 4. ages

### Ex. 7

1. fewer 2. much 3. few 4. A great number of 5. fewer 6. — 7. The number of  
8. this 9. less 10. fewer 11. much 12. number 13. amount

### Ex.8

1. advice	6. a job	11. bad luck
2. very good weather	7. doesn't	12. doesn't
3. trouble	8. furniture	13. the damage was
4. a (= a newspaper)	9. complete chaos	14. is
5. some	10. some	

### Ex.9

1. Many 2. little 3. much 4. few 5. number 6. little 7. amounts 8. many  
9. number 10. little 11. Much

### Ex.10

1. cats 2. butter 3. electricity 4. population 5. furniture 6. honesty 7. justice  
8. parts of sugar 9. artists 10. milk

### Ex.11

1. F, cheap accommodation	10. F, a less unpleasant experience
2. T	11. F, happiness
3. F, the traffic is	12. F, is expensive
4. F, bad behavior	13. T
5. T	14. F, noise
6. F, hair	15. T
7. F, the furniture takes	16. F, very interesting news / some
8. F, some advice	interesting news
9. T	

**Ex. 12**

1. a 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. an 6. a 7. an 8. a

**Ex.13**

1. a 2. an 3. an 4. a 5. an 6. a 7. an 8. a 9. a 10. an

**Ex. 14**

1. an 2. a 3. the 4. — 5. a 6. the 7. the 8. the 9. — 10. a 11. the

**Ex.15**

1. the 2. the 3. — 4. the 5. the 6. — 7. the 8. the 9. — 10. the 11. the 12. the  
13. — 14. — 15. — 16. — 17. — 18. the 19. — 20. the 21. the 22. the 23. the  
24. — 25. the 26. the 27. the 28. — 29. the 30. — 31. the 32. — 33. — 34. the  
35. the 36. the

**Ex.16**

1. — 2. — 3. — 4. the 5. — 6. the 7. — 8. the 9. — 10. — 11. — 12. — 13. — 14. —  
15. the 16. the 17. the 18. the 19. — 20. the 21. the 22. — 23. — 24. the

**Ex.17**

1. a 2. -, the 3. a 4. — 5. — 6. a 7. the 8. a 9. a 10. -, - 11. a 12. —  
13. -, - 14. the 15. a 16. — 17. a 18. — 19. — 20. the 21. the 22. — 23. —  
24. — 25. a 26. the 27. — 28. — 29. a 30. a

**Ex.18**

1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. A

**Ex.19**

1. -, the 2. an 3. the, the 4. — 5. the 6. -, the 7. the, -, the 8. -, -

**Ex.20**

1. a 2. an 3. — 4. — 5. some/— 6. — 7. a 8. — 9. some 10. —, a 11. a, some  
12. some 13. a, — 14. some 15. — 16. a

**Ex, 21**

1. an 2. the 3. a, the 4. the 5. a, the 6. the, the 7. a 8. the 9. a, - 10. The  
11. a, the 12. the 13. a, a 14. the

**Ex 22**

1. the 2. The, the 3. the 4. —, the 5. —, the 6. a 7. the 8. a, the 9. a, the 10. the, a  
11. a, the, the 12. — 13. the, the 14. the, the, a 15. — 16. the 17. the

**Ex 23**

- |                                       |                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Apples                             | 10. Skiing, swimming     |
| 2. the apples                         | 11. The Second World War |
| 3. Women, men                         | 12. the people           |
| 4. coffee, tea                        | 13. art, architecture    |
| 5. The cheese                         | 14. All the books        |
| 6. Most people, marriage, family life | 15. The beds             |
| 7. the marriage                       | 16. crime, unemployment  |
| 8. the life                           | 17. violence             |
| 9. Life, electricity                  |                          |

**Ex.24**

- |                            |                        |                   |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. the United States       | 8. T                   | 15. an igloo      |
| 2. T                       | 9. the longest         | 16. Everest       |
| 3. the south ... the north | 10. The United Kingdom | 17. T             |
| 4. the Mediterranean       | 11. a university       | 18. a great shock |
| 5. T                       | 12. much homework      | 19. T             |
| 6. the Middle East         | 13. T                  | 20. good books    |
| 7. the Swiss Alps          | 14. information        |                   |

**Ex.25**

- |                              |                 |                  |
|------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. T                         | 6. F, happiness | 12. T            |
| 2. F, a good grade           | 7. T            | 13. F, frankness |
| 3. F, make decisions         | 8. F, a pair    | 14. T            |
| 4. T                         | 9. F. wine      | 15. F, Doctors   |
| 5. F, an electric typewriter | 10. T           |                  |
|                              | 11. F, the boys |                  |

**Ex.26**

1. another   2. other   3. other   4. another   5. another   6. other   7. other  
 8. another   9. another   10. other   11. the other   12. another   13. others, other

**Ex.27**

1. play   2. understands   3. ends   4. goes   5. needs   6. is wearing   7. looks  
 8. begins   9. make   10. are making

**Ex.28**

1. smells   2. goes   3. is washing   4. goes   5. phones  
 6. are going   7. believe   8. remember

**Ex.29**

1. was reading   2. called   3. was watching   4. arrived   5. was listening   6. bought  
 7. opened   8. was going

**Ex.30**

- |                         |                    |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. F, smells            | 6. F, I... agree   | 10. F, was looking |
| 2. T                    | 7. F, did you do   | forward            |
| 3. F, didn't call       | 8. T               | 11. T              |
| 4. F, I always taste    | 9. F, you believed | 12. F, do you keep |
| 5. F, Is ... improving? |                    |                    |

**Ex.31**

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. felt, had eaten    | 5. threw, had read     |
| 2. had examined, had  | 6. had spent, asked    |
| 3. called, had gone   | 7. gave, had corrected |
| 4. finished, had come | 8. rose, had started   |

**Ex.32**

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. has been studying | 5. have known       |
| 2. had left          | 6. had been working |
| 3. has been          | 7. has made         |
| 4. had prepared      | 8. has been writing |

**Ex.33**

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. had bought       | 6. had learned     |
| 2. had forgotten    | 7. will have spent |
| 3. will have driven | 8. has taken       |
| 4. had won          | 9. will have built |
| 5. have measured    | 10. has inspired   |

**Ex.34**

- |                    |                   |                       |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. haven't had     | 7. wasn't reading | 13. I've been doing   |
| 2. didn't go       | 8. didn't have    | 14. did she go        |
| 3. is wearing      | 9. is beginning   | 15. I've been playing |
| 4. has grown       | 10. found         | 16. do you come       |
| 5. haven't decided | 11. wasn't        | 17. since I saw her   |
| 6. is being        | 12. you've been   | 18. for 20 years      |

**Ex. 35**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. will have finished                          | 6. will buy / is going to buy                |
| 2. arrives                                     | 7. will come                                 |
| 3. will be living                              | 8. will have been playing / will have played |
| 4. will leave                                  |  |
| 5. will have studied / will have been studying |  |

**Ex. 36**

1. buys 2. was looking 3. broke 4. was thinking 5. thought 6. bought  
7. are / are being 8. have seen 9. will you be staying 10. have arrived

**Ex.37**

1. has been working 2. wear 3. cause 4. teach 5. is sitting  
6. are trying 7. has been 8. have been sitting 9. get 10. do

**Ex.38**

1. F, was	5. F, went to lunch	9. F, has seen
2. T	6. T	10. F, he has studied
3. F, was a student	7. F, they recognized	
4. T	8. T	

**Ex. 39 TEST**

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. A 11. C 12. A 13. C  
14. A 15. B 16. B 17. B 18. C 19. C 20. A 21. C 22. A 23. B 24. B 25. B  
26. A 27. B

**Ex. 40 TEST**

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. B 11. A 12. C  
13. A 14. C 15. B 16. C 17. B 18. A 19. C 20. B

**Ex.41**

1. complains 2. have 3. is 4. buys 5. dislike 6. remembers 7. stop 8. ends  
9. pass 10. is

**Ex.42**

1. has 2. were 3. is 4. was 5. have 6. is 7. is 8. is

**Ex.43**

1. are 2. have 3. was 4. has 5. is 6. are 7. is 8. is 9. were 10. are

**Ex. 44**

1. comes	2. want	3. has	4. requires	5. know
6. costs	7. have	8. Tries	9. was/is	10. wants, is

**Ex.45**

1. is 2. was 3. are 4. was 5. moves 6. are 7. are 8. was  
9. makes 10. are 11. is 12. varies 13. are 14. was 15. goes

**Ex. 46**

1. are	2. is	3. are	4. is	5. is	6. is	7. are
8. is	9. are	10. is	11. is	12. is	13. is	14. is

**Ex.47**

1. are 2. are 3. is 4. is 5. are 6. are 7. are 8. is 9. are 10. are

**Ex.48**

1. are 2. is 3. are 4. are 5. are 6. are 7. are 8. are 9. is  
10. are 11. are 12. are

**Ex.49**

1. is 2. is 3. are 4. is 5. are 6. is 7. is 8. is 9. are 10. is 11. is 12. are  
13. is 14. is 15. are 16. is 17. are 18. is 19. are 20. are

**Ex.50**

1. don't 2. was 3. wasn't 4. want 5. isn't 6. does 7. have 8. aren't 9. is

**Ex.51**

1. I 2. she 3. I 4. he 5. me (me - после гл. **be** - informal, **I** – formal speech)  
6. he 7. He 8. they 9. me 10. me 11. I 12. his 13. I/me (I did)

**Ex.52**

1. I 2. me 3. us 4. he 5. We 6. her, me 7. her 8. He 9. We 10. him

**Ex.53**

1. F, Betty and he	6. F, Susan and her	11. F, by themselves
2. T	7. T	12. F, as intelligent as he
3. F, by himself	8. T	13. T
4. F, Margaret and me	9. T	14. T
5. T	10. F, my husband or me	15. F, It is she

**Ex.54**

1. T 2. me 3. them 4. T 5. me 6. her 7. T 8. T

**Ex. 55**

1. her 2. its 3. their 4. our 5. his 6. my 7. her 8. my 9. yours 10. his  
11. ours 12. mine 13. hers 14. yours 15. theirs 16. hers

**Ex.56**

1. T 2. F, hers 3. F, ours 4. T 5. F, yours 6. T 7. F, theirs  
8. T 9. F, his 10. T 11. F, theirs

**Ex.57**

1. himself	4. ourselves	7. itself
2. yourself	5. themselves	8. themselves
3. herself	6. myself	

**Ex. 58**

1. F, Kelly and me    2. F, by themselves    3. T    4. F, Marshall and me    5. T  
 6. F, yourselves    7. F, blame themselves    8. T    9. F, himself  
 10. F, washed thoroughly    11. T

**Ex. 59**

1. Who    2. Whoever    3. whom    4. whomever    5. who    6. whom  
 7. whomever    8. who    9. Whoever    10. whom

**Ex. 60**

1. whose    2. T    3. who    4. T    5. who    6. who    7. which    8. T

**Ex. 61**

1. F, they can crack    6. T    10. T  
 2. T    7. F, but they can    11. F, on the back of its leg  
 3. F, prevent it    decrease  
 4. T    8. T  
 5. F, gives it stability    9. F, because they can

**Ex. 62**

1. My mother is always    6. Computers are always  
 2. their homework    7. and they are all beautiful  
 3. his / her own pencil    8. around here is June 21.  
 4. for its    9. but didn't enjoy it  
 5. their systems    10. won her only Academy Award

**Ex. 63**

1. its    2. its    3. her    4. its    5. their    6. their    7. its    8. she    9. its    10. its    11. his

**Ex. 64**

1. to arrange    2. to wait/waiting    3. having    4. writing    5. being    6. to lie    7. close  
 8. to make    9. skating

**Ex. 65**

1. being    6. to live/ living  
 2. to come    7. driving/ to drive  
 3. travelling    8. to get/getting  
 4. cooking / to cook ...    9. listening  
     washing/ to wash    10. to come  
 5. to tell / telling    11. to learn

**Ex. 66**

1. smoking/ smoke    2. smoke    3. to meet    4. to go    5. eating    6. cry    7. to study  
 8. to go

**Ex. 67**

- |                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. to travel         | 7. to go                      |
| 2. winning           | 8. to learn to drive          |
| 3. to arrive         | 9. swimming / to swim         |
| 4. to have           | 10. to work, being, doing     |
| 5. ringing           | 11. Eating, drinking, smoking |
| 6. to learn/learning | 12. working                   |

**Ex. 68**

1. playing 2. to go 3. to learn 4. Fishing 5. taking 6. to be 7. to play  
8. collecting/to collect 9. listening 10. Parachuting 11. water skiing

**Ex. 69**

1. Marcy's 2. their 3. Your 4. Jessie's 5. my 6. Clay's 7. dentist's  
8. his 9. Lucy's 10. her

**Ex. 70**

- |                                   |                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. needs painting / to be painted | 3. need polishing | 5. need tightening |
| 2. needs cutting                  | 4. needs watering | 6. need taking up  |

**Ex. 71**

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. to fix; fixing / to be fixed                | 7. to be picked                |
| 2. cleaning / to be cleaned; to clean          | 8. to be washed                |
| 3. changing / to be changed                    | 9. fixing / to be fixed        |
| 4. ironing / to be ironed                      | 10. cleaning / to be cleaned   |
| 5. repairing / to be repaired                  | 11. painting / to be painted   |
| 6. to take; straightening / to be straightened | 12. repairing / to be repaired |
|  | 13. mending / to be mended     |

**Ex. 72**

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C  
11. B 12. A 13. C 14. C 15. D 16. C 17. D 18. C 19. A 20. B

**Ex. 73**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. How old are you?                           | 6. Are you working now?                                    |
| 2. Do you live locally?                       | 7. Who do you work for?                                    |
| 3. What is your address? / Where do you live? | 8. How long have you been working there? / have you worked |
| 4. When did you leave school?                 | 9. Do you enjoy your present job?                          |
| 5. Which school did you go to?                | 10. Why do you want to leave?                              |

**Ex. 74**

1. Does he know where it comes from?
2. Did you hear from him yesterday?
3. Where did he come from?
4. When did you see her?
5. How often do the trains stop at this station?
6. Where did you go for your holiday?
7. How much does it cost?
8. What did you have for breakfast?
9. Where did they find him?
10. Did he tell you this story again?
11. Would you like some milk?
12. Does she do her room herself?
13. Where did he put it?
14. Where does she put it?
15. What does he like best?
16. How often did the clock strike?
17. Did you plan to buy a new car?
18. Where did Max read it?
19. Does Max read the Daily news very often?
20. What train did Mr. Smith take from Dorking?
21. Why does she look so happy?
22. Do you have any questions to ask me?
23. Who lent it to his sister?
24. How often do they meet?
25. Why did we run?
26. At what time does this shop close?
27. Which of them did he choose?
28. What does she say?
29. At what time did they get home?
30. Is this all for today?

**Ex. 75**

- |                    |                              |                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. T               | 6. F, Was it?                | 10. F, Is it?      |
| 2. F, Oh, is he?   | 7. F, Oh, didn't it?         | 11. F, Oh, do you? |
| 3. F, Oh, are you? | 8. T                         | 12. T              |
| 4. F, Oh, did you? | 9. F, Oh, did everyone have? |                    |
| 5. T               |                              |                    |

**Ex. 76**

1. Please, tell me where you live.
2. What she said wasn't true.
3. So you know when they are coming.
4. I can't remember how much it costs.
5. Let's ask him which one he wants,
6. I don't know who is coming to the party.
7. I don't know who those people are.
8. Do you know whose pen it is?
9. Why they left the country is a secret.
10. What we are doing in class is easy.
11. Where she went is none of your business.
12. I don't remember how many letters there are in the English alphabet.
13. I don't know who the major of New York City is.
14. I need to find out how old a person has to be to get a driver's license.

**Ex. 77**

1. Do you know where Tom has gone?
2. Could you tell me where the post office is?
3. Do you know what this word means?
4. I wonder what the time it is.
5. Can't you remember where you parked your car?
6. I don't know if Ann is coming to the meeting,
7. Have you any idea where Jack lives?
8. Do you know what time he left?
9. Could you tell me where I can change some money?
10. I want to know what qualifications I need.
11. I don't know why Tom didn't come to the party.
12. Do you know how much it costs to park here?

**Ex. 78**

1. Have you ever been to Thailand?
2. What does this word mean?
3. How much does it cost to fly to Australia from here?
4. We can't remember where we put our passports.
5. T
6. Would you like to explain what the problem is?
7. How long did it take you to get here?
8. Now I understand why you didn't tell me about your job!
9. T
10. Why don't people in your country show more respect to the elderly?
11. T
12. Do you know where John is?
13. I was surprised when he told me how much he studies every day.
14. T
15. Tell me where they go after class every day.

**Ex. 79**

1. F, how much they sell for.
2. F, when the next test is?
3. T
4. T
5. F, what he did?
6. T
7. F, what the charge is.
8. F, when we will see.
9. T
10. F, where the subway entrance is?
11. T
12. F, what the class begins.
13. T
14. T
15. F, what his daughter studies.
16. F, where he will be ...?
17. F, how hot it is.
18. T
19. F, where our parents were born.
20. F, who painted.

**Ex. 80**

- |                 |                  |                 |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. will he      | 8. can't you     | 15. would you   |
| 2. weren't they | 9. will he       | 16. will you    |
| 3. isn't she    | 10. couldn't he  | 17. should I    |
| 4. were you     | 11. aren't there | 18. will you    |
| 5. does she     | 12. shall we     | 19. didn't they |
| 6. hasn't he    | 13. is it        | 20. had he      |
| 7. haven't you  | 14. aren't I     |                 |

**Ex. 81**

- |               |                 |                |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. don't they | 5. do I         | 9. will you    |
| 2. do you     | 6. don't I      | 10. aren't I   |
| 3. wasn't he  | 7. shall we     | 11. hadn't you |
| 4. won't you  | 8. wouldn't you | 12. don't we   |

**Ex. 82**

- |      |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. C  | 13. C | 17. D | 21. B |
| 2. B | 6. C | 10. B | 14. C | 18. C | 22. C |
| 3. C | 7. B | 11. C | 15. B | 19. C |       |
| 4. B | 8. C | 12. B | 16. A | 20. C |       |

**Ex. 83**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. F, There isn't <u>any</u> ...               | 9. F, ... have hardly <u>any</u> tails. |
| 2. T   | 10. F, ... because he had only \$3.     |
| 3. F, Scarcely <u>any</u> train station is ... | 11. T                                   |
| 4. F, I don't have <u>anything</u> ...         | 12. F, ... and not to talk.             |
| 5. F, Jerry never visited <u>any</u> ...       | 13. T                                   |
| 6. T   | 14. F, You are not going to finish ...  |
| 7. T   | 15. T                                   |
| 8. F, We will never accept <u>any</u> new ...  |   |

**Ex. 84**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. F, He could no longer ...           | 9. T                                      |
| 2. F, There were no cheaper beds ...   | 10. F, He did not have any good reason    |
| 3. T                                   | 11. F, ... I would not take.              |
| 4. T                                   | 12. F, The children could hardly believe. |
| 5. F, He could scarcely...             | 13. T                                     |
| 6. F, ... has no children.             | 14. F, ... no children                    |
| 7. F, ... without sturdy hiking boots. | 15. T                                     |
| 8. F, We were not interested ...       |   |

**Ex. 85**

- |                     |                    |                   |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. So do I.         | 4. So would I.     | 7. So should I.   |
| 2. Neither do I.    | 5. Neither have I. | 8. So did I.      |
| 3. Neither could I. | 6. So was I.       | 9. Neither did I. |

**Ex. 86**

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. so are they / they are too        | 10. neither will his sister / his sister won't either |
| 2. neither have I/I haven't either   | 11. so does Florida / Florida does too                |
| 3. so does she/she does too          | 12. isn't either                                      |
| 4. neither did he / he didn't either | 13. doesn't either                                    |
| 5. so is he / he is too              | 14. so are we / we are too                            |
| 6. neither will he / he won't either | 15. so am I / I am too                                |
| 7. so do we / we do too              | 16. so did the children                               |
| 8. neither am I / I'm not either     |   |
| 9. so did I / I did too              |   |

**Ex. 87**

- |               |               |                           |
|---------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| 1. will bake  | 5. will make  | 9. is                     |
| 2. would bake | 6. would make | 10. were                  |
| 3. have       | 7. had        | 11. would not be ... were |
| 4. had        | 8. has        |                           |

**Ex. 88**

- |                 |                                    |                  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. have         | 6. would have gone                 | 10. were         |
| 2. had          | 7. Is                              | 11. is           |
| 3. had had      | 8. were ... would visit            | 12. had finished |
| 4. shall / will | 9. had been ... would have visited | 13. spoke        |
| 5. would go     |                                    | 14. went         |
|                 |                                    | 15. lived        |

**Ex. 89**

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. spoke ... would understand             | 7. am not                       |
| 2. weren't... would buy                   | 8. had known                    |
| 3. could afford ... would go out          | 9. phone rings                  |
| 4. weren't raining ... could have lunch   | 10. were                        |
| 5. didn't have to work ... could meet you | 11. had                         |
| 6. found                                  | 12. hadn't had                  |
|   | 13. had driven/had been driving |
|   | 14. had / could                 |

**Ex.90**

- |                                       |                    |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. would you marry me                 | 9. you could       |
| 2. he didn't like you                 | 10. hadn't arrived |
| 3. You'll find                        | 11. lend           |
| 4. Wouldn't your parents be proud ... | 12. weren't        |
| 5. I don't revise                     | 13. don't profect  |
| 6. would you look for                 | 14. had realised   |
| 7. you weren't                        | 15. hadn't failed  |
| 8. would you feel                     |                    |

**Ex.91**

- |               |                   |                |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. would give | 6. wouldn't marry | 11. would be   |
| 2. had        | 7. weren't        | 12. were       |
| 3. didn't go  | 8. went           | 13. found      |
| 4. were       | 9. would lose     | 14. would give |
| 5. could      | 10. were          | 15. rode       |

**Ex.92**

- |                 |                       |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. would feel   | 5. closed down / were | 8. didn't come       |
| 2. would take   | closed down           | 9. borrowed          |
| 3. refused      | 6. pressed            | 10. walked           |
| 4. wouldn't get | 7. would be           | 11. would understand |

**Ex.93**

- |                 |                     |                        |
|-----------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. wouldn't buy | 5. would taste      | 8. didn't go           |
| 2. would help   | 6. were             | 9. weren't... wouldn't |
| 3. lived        | 7. wouldn't wait... | be                     |
| 4. would live   | would go            |                        |

**Ex.94**

1. If the driver in front hadn't stopped so suddenly, the accident wouldn't have happened.
2. If I'd / I had known that George had to get up early, I'd / I would have woken him up.
3. If Jim hadn't lent me the money, I wouldn't have been able to buy the car / ... I couldn't have bought the car.
4. If Margaret hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd / she would have been injured.
5. If you'd / you had had (some) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
6. If I'd / I had had some money on me, I'd / I would have got a taxi.
7. If I'd known I would have gone to visit you.
8. he'd missed / he had missed ... he would have been / he'd have been
9. I wouldn't have forgotten / I'd have forgotten ... you hadn't reminded

10. I'd had / I had had ... I'd have sent / I would have sent
11. It wouldn't have been ... I'd walked / I had walked
12. I was / I were
13. I'd been tired / I had been tired

### **Ex.95**

1. came
2. wouldn't have disturbed you
3. If you hadn't provoked the dog, it wouldn't have attacked you.
4. They would be upset if I told them what happened / ... what had happened
5. I wouldn't have got (so) wet if I'd had an umbrella.
6. If he hadn't been (so) nervous, he wouldn't have failed.

### **Ex.96**

1. C   2. C   3. B   4. A, A   5. D   6. C   7. D   8. A
9. B   10. A   11. B   12. C   13. B   14. D   15. A   16. D

### **Ex. 97**

- |                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. had studied            | 9. are healthy, they will learn |
| 2. had painted            | 10. will stop                   |
| 3. had been admitted      | 11. would look better           |
| 4. becomes / will become  | 12. would have had              |
| 5. will get sticky        | 13. were single                 |
| 6. met                    | 14. wither and die              |
| 7. had had the money      | 15. want to go                  |
| 8. were really my friends | 16. wouldn't be so nervous      |

### **Ex.98**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. F, ... he would not have broken ... | 9. F, ... he would not have lost...       |
| 2. F, ... he were taller ...           | 10. F, ... I would have seen him.         |
| 3. F, ... my apartment were larger ... | 11. T                                     |
| 4. F, ... he were ready                | 12. F, ... you take a trip ...            |
| 5. T                                   | 13. F, ... he would certainly have bought |
| 6. F, ... Betty had driven ...         | ....                                      |
| 7. F, ... I finish studying ...        | 14. T                                     |
| 8. T                                   | 15. F, ... I would have paid              |

### **Ex.99**

1. I wish I could give up smoking.
2. I wish I had a cigarette/some cigarettes.
3. I wish George were here.
4. I wish it weren't so cold.
5. I wish I didn't live in London.
6. I wish Tina could come to the party.

7. I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow.
8. I wish I knew something about cars.
9. I wish I were lying on a beautiful sunny beach.
- 10.... wishes she knew how to dance.
11. I had a key.
12. I wish Ann were here.
13. I wish I didn't live in a big city.
14. I wish I could go to the party.

### **Ex.100**

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. it would stop       | 7. we had had                 |
| 2. I knew              | 8. it weren't                 |
| 3. I had taken         | 9. hadn't said                |
| 4. Ann were            | 10. I hadn't gone             |
| 5. they would hurry up | 11. you wouldn't go/didn't go |
| 6. we didn't have      | 12. were                      |

### **Ex.101**

1. I wish I had applied for it.
2. I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument.
3. I wish I hadn't painted it red. / ... painted the gate red.
4. I wish I had bought my camera.
5. I wish they had told me they were coming. /I wish I had known they were coming.

### **Ex.102**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. F, I wish Sarah were here now.      | 7. F, I wish everything weren't so expensive. |
| 2. T                                   | 8. F, I wish that it were true                |
| 3. F, I wish I had more money.         | 9. T  |
| 4. F, I wish it weren't so cold today. | 10.T  |
| 5. T                                   | 11. F, weren't                                |
| 6. T                                   | 12. F, were over                              |

### **Ex.103**

- |                   |                   |                                     |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. as if he were  | 5. as if he knew  | 9. as if he were not treated fairly |
| 2. as if I were   | 6. as if I were   | 10. as if they were                 |
| 3. as if she were | 7. as if she knew | 11. as if they were                 |
| 4. as if it were  | 8. as if he were  |                                     |

**Ex.104**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. T                                   | 9. T                                    |
| 2. F, ... he didn't have to retire ... | 10. F, ... she were still living ...    |
| 3. F, ... he had not lost money ...    | 11. F, ... he had a bigger apartment... |
| 4. T                                   | 12. T                                   |
| 5. F, ... he had more free time ...    | 13. F, ... he were not required ...     |
| 6. F, ... he had not ignored ...       | 14. T                                   |
| 7. F, ... I were earning ...           | 15. F, ... he had bought...             |
| 8. F, ... my father did more work ...  | 16. F, ... I were living ...            |

**Ex.105**

1. go 2. wearing 3. be 4. being 5. eating 6. like 7. running 8. drink

**Ex. 106**

1. am 2. – 3. am 4. – 5. – 6. are 7. is 8. – 9. – 10. – 11. is 12. are...am

**Ex.107**

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1. get used to the weather, food, etc. | 4. get used to living |
| 2. get used to the noise               | 5. got used to her    |
| 3. used to the heat                    |                       |

**Ex.108**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ... Eileen used to stay ...                       | 7. ... which used to follow the ship .... |
| 2. T   | 8. T                                      |
| 3. My aunt used to have ....                         | 9. ... used to be very harsh ...          |
| 4. T   | 10. As children we used to spend ...      |
| 5. ... there used to be a football pitch ....        | 11. T                                     |
| 6. ... bread didn't use to taste like cardboard .... |   |

**Ex. 109**

- |  |                                    |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. I used to study / was used to studying ...  | 6. ... used to cooking             | 14. People used to think           |
| 2. We used to go / were used to going ...      | 7. Mr. Peters used to think ...    | 15. I'm not used to playing ...    |
| 3. She used to get up / was used to getting up | 8. Mr. Anderson used to Jog ...    | 16. ... if you're not used to...   |
| 4. He used to drink / was used to drinking     | 9. ... used to sleeping            | 17. They aren't used to hard work. |
| 5. She used to speak / was used to speaking    | 10. She used to dance ...          | 18. ... I never used to do it...   |
|  | 11. There used to be ...           | 19. We aren't used to ...          |
|  | 12. ... I was used to swimming ... | 20.... used to tease ...           |
|  | 13.... used to smoke               |                                    |

**Ex.110**

1. ... to get a taxi rather than walk home.
2. ... go for a swim than play tennis.
3. ... wait a few minutes than leave now.
4. ... to eat at home rather than go to a restaurant.
5. ... think about it for a while than decide now.
6. ... read a book than watch television.

**Ex. 111**

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. would you rather I cooked it? | 3. would you rather I did it?      |
| 2. I told her?                   | 4. would you rather I answered it? |

**Ex. 112**

1. not serve   2. not go   3. go   4. write   5. have   6. didn't do  
7. didn't work   8. make   9. didn't keep   10. came

**Ex. 113**

1. stayed   2. didn't   3. stay   4. didn't   5. was   6. didn't

**Ex. 114**

1. I shouldn't have eaten so much.
2. He must have forgotten.
3. You needn't have gone home so early.
4. It can't be changed now.
5. She may be watching television.
6. She must have been waiting for somebody.
7. He couldn't have done it.
8. You ought to have been here earlier.
9. I would have helped you.
10. You should have been warned.
11. He might not have been feeling very well./He might not have felt very well.

**Ex.115**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. B | 5. B | 6. B |
| 7. B | 8. B | 9. A |      |      |      |

**Ex.116**

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. F, had to walk     | 7. F, might have gone          |
| 2. T                  | 8. F, I had to call the doctor |
| 3. F, must to sign    | 9. F, should not have made     |
| 4. F, would have gone | 10. T                          |
| 5. F, might bake      | 11. F, might go                |
| 6. T                  | 12. F, Beth had to take        |

**Ex.117**

- |                         |                          |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. careless, carelessly | 6. easy, easily          | 11. carefully, good |
| 2. easy, easily         | 7. comfortable           | 12. quiet, quietly  |
| 3. softly, soft         | 8. carefully             | 13. dark            |
| 4. quietly              | 9. sad                   |                     |
| 5. well, good           | 10. cheerfully, cheerful |                     |

**Ex.118**

- |           |           |            |          |
|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1. Right  | 3. W.hard | 5. W, well | 7. Right |
| 2. W,well | 4. W,good | 6. Right   |          |

**Ex.119**

- |            |           |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. quietly | 4. well   | 7. nervous |
| 2. quiet   | 5. safe   | 8. slow    |
| 3. nice    | 6. safely | 9. angrily |

**Ex. 120**

- |               |               |                    |
|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. well       | 7. bright     | 13. simultaneously |
| 2. quickly    | 8. slowly     | 14. close          |
| 3. firm       | 9. really     | 15. incredible     |
| 4. accurately | 10. delicious | 16. intense        |
| 5. beautiful  | 11. annually  |                    |
| 6. smoothly   | 12. simple    |                    |

**Ex.121**

- |              |                  |                  |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. F, late   | 8. F, hastily    | 15. F, well      |
| 2. T         | 9. F, thoroughly | 16. F, carefully |
| 3. T         | 10. T            | 17. T            |
| 4. T         | 11. F, promptly  | 18. f, badly     |
| 5. F, really | 12. T            | 19. T            |
| 6. T         | 13. T            | 20. F, fast      |
| 7. T         | 14. F, fast      |                  |

**Ex. 122**

- |                        |                          |               |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| 2. really good cook    | 4. very friendly towards | 6. hard       |
| 3. extremely foolishly | us                       | 7. well today |
| 5. practical (to me)   | 8. a fast swimmer        |               |

**Ex.123**

- |                     |                       |                  |
|---------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. F, impatiently   | 6. F, perfect English | 11. F, awfully   |
| 2. T                | 7. F, exceptionally   | 12. T            |
| 3. F, unnecessarily | 8. F, well enough     | 13. F, well      |
| 4. F, hard          | 9. T                  | 14. F, badly     |
| 5. T                | 10. F, well-paid      | 15. T            |
|                     |                       | 16. F, perfectly |

**Ex.124**

- |          |          |             |            |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. are   | 5. feels | 9. appeared | 13. sounds |
| 2. seems | 6. was   | 10. are     |            |
| 3. looks | 7. was   | 11. smell   |            |
| 4. is    | 8. seem  | 12. looks   |            |

**Ex.125**

- |                |                 |                  |                      |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. smell sweet | 6. T            | 11. sounded loud | 16. appeared nervous |
| 2. T           | 7. felt sad     | 12. T            |                      |
| 3. tasted good | 8. T            | 13. smell nice   |                      |
| 4. sounds well | 9. tasted awful | 14. tasted sour  |                      |
| 5. tasted bad  | 10. T           | 15. T            |                      |

**Ex.126**

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. the happier                 | 5. The less, ... the more |
| 2. the faster                  | 6. colder ... colder      |
| 3. The fresher, ... the better | 7. more excited           |
| 4. The more, ... the fatter    | 8. worse ... worse        |

**Ex.127**

- |           |           |            |            |              |
|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. best   | 3. oldest | 5. Between | 7. happier | 9. less      |
| 2. better | 4. older  | 6. most    | 8. Among   | 10. shortest |

**Ex.128**

- |                                  |                          |                             |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. F, is better than             | 7. T                     | 14. F, than any other house |
| 2. F, be higher than             | 8. T                     | 15. F, worse than           |
| 3. T                             | 9. F, than that in 1970  |                             |
| 4. T                             | 10. T                    |                             |
| 5. F, was friendlier than        | 11. F, more crowded than |                             |
| 6. F, anybody else in the family | 12. T                    |                             |
|                                  | 13. T                    |                             |

**Ex. 129**

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. F, the poorest people                               | 8. T                                  |
| 2. T   | 9. F, doctor that                     |
| 3. F, the most surprised person of all the contestants | 10. T                                 |
| 4. F, liked Belgium the best                           | 11. F, the most elegant               |
| 5. T   | 12. F, the most densely               |
| 6. F, the most humid                                   | 13. F, the worst that                 |
| 7. F, the biggest                                      | 14. T                                 |
| 16. T  | 15. F, the fastest runner of the team |
| 17. F, the best ice-cream                              | 19. F, the worst grade                |
| 18. T  | 20. T                                 |

**Ex.130**

- |                       |                          |                                     |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. the bigger         | 6. The brighter students | 11. than we are                     |
| 2. a kinder lady      | 7. is far worse          | 12. does not like me as much as her |
| 3. the most wonderful | 8. as he is              | 13. as she is recovery              |
| 4. as old as Jane     | 9. than I do             | 14. than he does                    |
| 5. Who is taller .... | 10. than they are        | 15. than I did                      |

**Ex.131**

- |                           |                             |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. later                  | 6. ran more quickly         | 12. like her mother        |
| 2. drove faster           | 7. works the hardest of all | 13. as expensive as        |
| 3. more easily            | 8. did very badly           | 14. as intelligent as      |
| 4. drives worse than I do | 9. like the one             | 15. as Bob's               |
| 5. come earlier           | 10. as mine                 | 16. the same color as mine |
|                           | 11. as beautiful as         |                            |

**Ex.132**

- |                    |                          |                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. F, are smoother | 5. T                     | 9. T                             |
| 2. T               | 6. F, the earliest       | 10. F, worst-dressed             |
| 3. F, the bigger   | 7. F, the more talkative | 11. F, weighs more and is taller |
| 4. T               | 8. T                     |                                  |

**Ex.133**

- |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A  | 2. A  | 3. B  | 4. B  | 5. B  | 6. B  | 7. B  | 8. A  | 9. A  | 10. A |
| 11. B | 12. A | 13. B | 14. A | 15. A | 16. A | 17. A | 18. B | 19. A | 20. B |

**Ex.134**

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. F, police station  | 11. T                       |
| 2. T                  | 12. F, dormitory rules      |
| 3. F, car license     | 13. T                       |
| 4. F, street lights   | 14. F, television repairman |
| 5. F, economics class | 15. F, dance recitals       |
| 6. F, world situation | 16. T                       |
| 7. T                  | 17. F, plane ticket         |
| 8. T                  | 18. F, language courses     |
| 9. F, football teams  | 19. T                       |
| 10. T                 | 20. F, physics course       |

**Ex. 135**

- |                                    |                         |                            |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a three-act play                | 6. a shoe store         | 13. a two-car family       |
| 2. a thirty-story building         | 7. a twenty-dollar bill | 14. a three-drawer cabinet |
| 3. a three-minute telephone call   | 8. a science student    | 15. a two-egg omelet       |
| 4. a five hundred-word composition | 9. a five-litre can     | 16. a two-hour film        |
| 5. an English teacher              | 10. a three-pin plug    |                            |
|                                    | 11. a \$20 note         |                            |
|                                    | 12. a three-week course |                            |

**Ex. 136**

- |                         |                          |                              |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. a student handbook   | 6. a three-credit course | 11. a ten-year old sister, a |
| 2. a ten-month-old baby | 7. a nine-room house     | twelve-year old              |
| 3. a three-day trip     | 8. dog food              | brother                      |
| 4. a child psychologist | 9. a guest-room          |                              |
| 5. a fifty-dollar check | 10. a five-page paper    |                              |

**Ex. 137**

- |                        |                          |                         |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a 27-year-old woman | 5. ten-year-old boys     | 8. ten-pound tickets    |
| 2. a three-hour flight | 6. a ten-part television | 9. a ten-story building |
| 3. a four-day strike   | series                   | 10. a five-kilo bag     |
| 4. a 200-page book     | 7. a two-litre bottle    | 11. a five-mile walk    |

**Ex. 138**

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. F, two-hundred-year-old house | 9. T                                   |
| 2. F, three-hundred-dollar suit  | 10. F, five-thousand-year-old pyramids |
| 3. T                             | 11. F, two-ounce bottle                |
| 4. F, fifty-minute classes       | 12. T                                  |
| 5. T                             | 13. T                                  |
| 6. T                             | 14. F, five-hundred-page manual        |
| 7. F, thirty-year-old man        | 15. F, ten-room house                  |
| 8. F, five-dollar-a-pound cheese |  |

**Ex. 139**

- |                 |                |                          |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. enough money | 4. enough room | 7. enough qualifications |
| 2. enough cups  | 5. well enough | 8. big enough            |
| 3. warm enough  | 6. enough time |                          |

**Ex. 140**

- |                   |                  |                   |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. warm enough    | 6. wide enough   | 11. enough drinks |
| 2. enough money   | 7. enough time   | 12. heavy enough  |
| 3. enough English | 8. fast enough   | 13. enough people |
| 4. warm enough    | 9. strong enough | 14. enough chairs |
| 5. strong enough  | 10. old enough   |                   |

**Ex. 141**

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. enough light                    | 8. isn't old enough          |
| 2. big enough to sit               | 9. enough cars / cars enough |
| 3. have enough information         | 10. good enough              |
| 4. good enough                     | 11. enough food              |
| 5. enough hamburgers for the party | 12. good enough              |
| 6. be strong enough                | 13. enough time              |
| 7. without enough sleep            |                              |

**Ex.142**

- |                          |                           |   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 1. T                     | 7. F, many good friends   | 12. F, not good enough to be acceptable |
| 2. F, very good          | 8. T                      | 13. T                                   |
| 3. T                     | 9. F, English well enough | 14. F, very happy                       |
| 4. F, intelligent enough | 10. T                     | 15. F, old enough                       |
| 5. F, enough money       |                           |   |
| 6. T                     | 11. F, big enough to sit  |   |

**Ex.143**

- |               |               |                |             |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. because of | 5. because of | 9. because of  | 13. because |
| 2. because of | 6. Because of | 10. because    | 14. Because |
| 3. because    | 7. because    | 11. because of |             |
| 4. Because    | 8. because of | 12. because of |             |

**Ex.144**

- |               |            |                |                |
|---------------|------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. because    | 5. because | 9. because of  | 13. Because    |
| 2. Because of | 6. because | 10. Because of | 14. because    |
| 3. because of | 7. because | 11. because of | 15. Because of |
| 4. Because of | 8. because | 12. because of |                |

**Ex.145**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The car was so expensive that....            | 7. She talked so fast that....            |
| 2. It was such an expensive car that....        | 8. It was such a bad performance that.... |
| 3. It was such a cold day that....              | 9. I've met so many people ....           |
| 4. The weather was so hot that....              | 10. There're was so little traffic ....   |
| 5. We're having such beautiful weather that.... | 11 .There were so few people ....         |
| 6. Grandpa held me so tightly ....              | 12. Sally used so much paper ....         |

**Ex. 146**

- |         |         |          |          |         |          |         |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|---------|----------|---------|
| 1. so   | 2. such | 3. so    | 4. such  | 5. such | 6. so    | 7. such |
| 8. such | 9. so   | 10. such | 11. such | 12. so  | 13. such |         |

**Ex. 147**

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ... such a narrow road ...    | 3. ... such big feet...         |
| 2. ... was such warm weather ... | 4. ... such a lot of people ... |

**Ex.148**

- |           |           |           |            |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. so     | 4. such a | 7. such a | 10. such a |
| 2. such   | 5. so     | 8. so     | 11. such a |
| 3. such a | 6. such   | 9. such a | 12. such a |

**Ex. 149**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. so slow that                                     | 6. so small a lunch / such a small lunch |
| 2. so interesting a book / such an interesting book | 7. so fast that                          |
| 3. so heavy that                                    | 8. such a short time / so short a time   |
| 4. such a nice girl / so nice a girl                | 9. so easy that                          |
| 5. so late that                                     | 10. such nice weather                    |

**Ex. 150**

- |   |                                     |                         |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. F, so good a meal / such a good meal | 8. F, such a bad day / so bad a day | 15. F, so large that    |
| 2. T                                    | 9. F, such                          | 16. F, such good dvice  |
| 3. F, so few                            | 10. T                               | 17. T                   |
| 4. T                                    | 11. T                               | 18. F, so shy that      |
| 5. F, so rich                           | 12. F, so many things               | 19. F, such a good game |
| 6. F, so forgetful that                 | 13. F, so confusing that            | 20. T                   |
| 7. T                                    | 14. T                               |                         |

**Ex. 151**

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ... is                            | 7. The door will be opened by Tom.        |
| 2. ... is being                      | 8. The door is going to be opened by Tom. |
| 3. ... has been                      | 9. The door will have been opened by Tom. |
| 4. The door was opened by Tom.       |   |
| 5. The door was being opened by Tom. |   |
| 6. The door had been opened by Tom.  |   |

**Ex. 152**

1. That play was written by Shakespeare.
2. Ann will be invited to the party.
3. That report is being prepared by Alex.
4. Customers are served by waitresses and waiters.
5. The lesson is going to be explained by the teacher.
6. A new idea has been suggested by Shirley.
7. The farmer's wagon was being pulled by two horses.
8. The book had been returned to the library by Kathy.
9. By this time tomorrow, the announcement will have been made by the president.
10. That note wasn't written by me, it was written by Jim.
11. That pie wasn't made by Alice. Was it made by Mrs. French?
12. Is this course taught by Prof. Jackson? I know that it isn't taught by Prof. Adams.
13. Those papers haven't been signed by Mrs. Andrews yet. Have they been signed by Mr. Andrews yet?
13. Is your house being painted by Mr. Brown?
15. I won't be fooled by his tricks.

### **Ex.153**

1. -
2. The winning goal was scored by Jackie.
3. -
4. -
5. That theory was developed by Dr. Ikeda.
6. The cup was dropped by Timmy.
7. -
8. I was interviewed by the assistant manager.
9. -
10. The small fishing village was destroyed by a hurricane.
- 11.-
- 12.-

### **Ex.154**

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. F, ... who was born         | 6. F, ... someone will get / be hurt ... |
| 2. F, ... it belonged to ...   | 7. F, ... but it didn't refer to you.    |
| 3. T                           | 8. T                                     |
| 4. F, It's being repaired ...  | 9. F, ... the money had disappeared?     |
| 5. F, The bridge collapsed ... | 10.F, ... are not allowed ...            |

### **Ex. 155**

1. All the salaries have been cut.
2. I was kept waiting for half an hour by the bank manager.
3. All travel expenses must be paid by employers.
4. Do you suppose such a letter could have been written by your brother?
5. A computer is used to do that job nowadays.
6. People were being made redundant by the firm almost every week.
7. The police were not informed that there had been a mistake.
8. Were will you be sent by your company next year?
9. Josephine was distressed by the news about the famine.
- 10.The camera hasn't been claimed by anyone.
11. Have you been asked for your opinion by anyone?
- 12.That parcel shouldn't have been opened by the children.
13. Identity badges must be worn by all visitors.

**Ex.156**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. F, I ate steak last night.   | 15.T  |
| 2. T  | 16.T  |
| 3. T  | 17. F, I turned on the light as I entered my bedroom.                                 |
| 4. T  | 18. F, That electronics company is expanding and developing many new products.        |
| 5. F, The road was built in two years at a cost of five million dollars,      |   |
| 7. F, The people loved their leader and forgave his mistakes.                 | 19. F, The Battle of Hastings was fought in 1066.                                     |
| 7. F, John answered the phone on the first ring.                              | 20. F, Jane put on her earrings before she went to the party.                         |
| 8. T  | 21.T  |
| 9. T  | 22. F, Claire painted the living room and laid a new carpet.                          |
| 10.T  | 23. F, Jack works hard during the week and spends his free time sailing his new boat. |
| 11.T  | 24. F, The carefully selected students represented the class well.                    |
| 12. F, As we neared the house, we could see a small dog sitting on the porch. | 25.F, Bob plays the piano and the guitar.   |
| 13. F, A lot of crimes were committed in this neighborhood last month.        |   |
| 14. F, If you studied more, you could easily pass your tests.                 |   |

**Ex.157**

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. No, I had it cut.        | 4. No, he had it cut down.  |
| 3. No, they had it painted. | 5. No, she had it repaired. |

**Ex.158**

- |               |                  |            |                            |
|---------------|------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| 1. work       | 6. run           | 11. do     | 15. understand/ understand |
| 2. exchanged  | 7. altered       | 12.to fix  | 16. filled                 |
| 3. change     | 8. do            | 13.fixed   |                            |
| 4. borrow     | 9. take          | 14. bother |                            |
| 5. get/to get | 10. find/to find |            |                            |

**Ex.159**

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1.... have your hair cut...          | 5. Do you have your newspaper delivered?  |
| 2.... have it cut.                   |   |
| 3.... do you have your car serviced? | 6..... am having a swimming pool built.   |
| 4.... have a new engine fit.         | 7.... haven't had the film developed yet. |
|                                      | 8 ... had his portrait painted ...        |

**Ex.160**

- |            |             |             |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. stay    | 5. to clean | 9. filled   | 13. take    |
| 2. painted | 6. cashed   | 10. cry     | 14. cleaned |
| 3. write   | 7. to go    | 11. to lend |             |
| 4. wash    | 8. redo     | 12. removed |             |

**Ex.161**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ... I'm going to have my number changed.           | 4. ... I'm having blinds fit on the windows. |
| 2. ... she should be having the plaster taken off.... | 5. ... she had him followed.                 |
| 3. ... he's had a fine new house                      | 6. ... he'd had his portrait painted ....    |
|   | 7. ... to have it straightened. designed.    |

**Ex. 162**

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ... take a nap             | 7. ... to get the house painted/ |
| 2. ... to take us             | 8. ... temperature taken         |
| 3. ... a tooth filled         | 9. ... let me use                |
| 4. ... let us write           | 10. ... to study/study           |
| 5. ... helps her to do/do ... | 11. ... made him eat             |
| 6. .. make us type            |                                  |

**Ex.163**

- |                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. T                  | 6. F, my parents tidy up      |
| 2. F, her hair cut    | 7. T                          |
| 3. F, his sister type | 8. F, let me come             |
| 4. T                  | 9. T                          |
| 5. T                  | 10. F, let their children see |

**Ex.164**

- |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. whose | 5. where | 9. which  | 13. whom  |
| 2. where | 6. whose | 10. whom  | 14. which |
| 3. who   | 7. whom  | 11. where | 15. who   |
| 4. whose | 8. who   | 12. which | 16. which |

**Ex.165**

- |           |           |           |           |               |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. which  | 2. who    | 3. which  | 4. which  | 5. who (whom) | 6. whose  |
| 7. where  | 8. which  | 9. who    | 10. which | 11. whose     | 12. which |
| 13. who   | 14. which | 15. whose | 16. where | 17. which     | 18. which |
| 19. where |           |           |           |               |           |

**Ex.166**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. D | 4. C | 5. A | 6. D | 7. B | 8. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Ex. 167**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. N | 2. N | 3. N | 4. N | 5. R | 6. R | 7. N | 8. R | 9. R | 10. N |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|

**Ex 168**

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. F, which/that       | 6. T                    |
| 2. F, whose experience | 7. F, who/that          |
| 3. T                   | 8. T                    |
| 4. F, which/that       | 9. F, who/that          |
| 5. T                   | 10. F, whose photograph |

**Ex 169**

- |            |          |            |           |
|------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. be      | 5. come  | 9. be      | 13. fill  |
| 2. stop    | 6. be    | 10. go     | 14. be    |
| 3. prepare | 7. leave | 11. be     | 15. be    |
| 4. be      | 8. pull  | 12. become | 16. write |

**Ex 170**

- |         |          |          |            |            |
|---------|----------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1. be   | 3. tell  | 5. write | 7. be      | 9. go      |
| 2. come | 4. speak | 6. see   | 8. come/be | 10. arrive |

**Ex.171**

- |                       |                                 |                       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. take               | 6. be controlled, be eliminated | 11. be admitted       |
| 2. be named           | 7. have (should have)           | 12. not be            |
| 3. stay (should stay) | 8. be                           | 13. return            |
| 4. be postponed       | 9. know                         | 14. be built          |
| 5. be permitted       | 10. be                          | 15. not tell, be told |

**Ex.172**

- |                   |                      |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. T              | 6. F, that I go      | 11. T                |
| 2. T              | 7. T                 | 12. F, votebe        |
| 3. T              | 8. F, students write | 13. F, she study     |
| 4. F, that I look | 9. F, patient take   | 14. T                |
| 5. T              | 10. F, he go         | 15. F, everyone have |

**Ex.173**

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. F, employees take      | 3. F, I stop                  |
| 2. T                      | 4. T                          |
| 5. F, John have           | 10. F, a driver renew         |
| 6. F, crew have           | 11. F, we not use             |
| 7. T                      | 12. T                         |
| 8. F, Mr. Smith not leave | 13. F, the money be collected |
| 9. T                      |                               |

**Ex. 174**

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. both       | 4. and        | 7. both       |
| 2. as well as | 5. as well as | 8. as well as |
| 3. not only   | 6. but also   | 9. not only   |

**Ex. 175**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ... and by radio transmitters.      | 9. ... both a saving account.                                |
| 2. ... nor eardrums.                   | 10. ... as well as on the table.                             |
| 3. ... but also weakens its structure. | 11. ... are not only less expensive but also more efficient. |
| 4. ... neither a tournament.           | 12. ... but observe what they do.                            |
| 5. ... but also in industry.           | 13. ... as well as a very effective teacher.                 |
| 6. ... and Spanish.                    | 14. ... teaches anthropology.                                |
| 7. ... Mary, Ellen and Jean ....       |  |
| 8. ... not only theoretical classes.   |  |

**Ex.176**

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. F, ... nor speak               | 6. T                                      |
| 2. T                              | 7. T                                      |
| 3. F, ... and living at home      | 8. F, ... was long, boring and depressing |
| 4. T                              | 9. T                                      |
| 5. F, ... but also the broad jump | 10. F, ... and irresponsible              |

**Ex.177**

- |             |             |              |              |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. knew     | 5. know how | 9. knows how | 13. know how |
| 2. know how | 6. know how | 10. knew     |              |
| 3. know how | 7. knew     | 11. know how |              |
| 4. know how | 8. know     | 12. know how |              |

**Ex. 178**

- |                        |                         |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Although            | 6. in spite of/despite  | 11. in spite of/Despite |
| 2. In spite of/Despite | 7. although             | 12. in spite of/Despite |
| 3. Although            | 8. In spite of/Despite  | 13. In spite of/Despite |
| 4. although            | 9. although             | 14. although            |
| 5. In spite of/Despite | 10. In spite of/Despite |                         |

**Ex.179**

1. Despite his English name/ Despite having an English name/Despite the fact that he has an English name ...
2. Although she had an injured foot/Although her foot was injured ...
3. ... in spite of the low salary/... in spite of the salary being low/... in spite of the fact that the salary was low ...
4. ... despite being the best team/ ... despite the fact that we were the best team ...
5. Even though I hadn't eaten for 24 hours ...
6. In spite of having very little money, they are happy.
7. Although my foot was injured ...
8. I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story/... in spite of the story being silly.
9. Despite living in the same street...
10. Even though I had an umbrella ...

**Ex.180**

- |                |               |             |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. Although    | 3. because of | 5. Although |
| 2. In spite of | 4. Despite    | 6. Although |

**Ex.181**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. B | 4. D | 5. C | 6. A | 7. B | 8. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Ex.182**

- |           |          |         |           |
|-----------|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. raised | 4. set   | 7. laid | 10. raise |
| 2. rises  | 5. lay   | 8. lie  | 11. lying |
| 3. sat    | 6. lying | 9. lies |           |

**Ex. 183**

- |         |          |            |
|---------|----------|------------|
| 1. lay  | 6. lie   | 11. lay    |
| 2. lies | 7. sat   | 12. sat    |
| 3. set  | 8. sat   | 13. lain   |
| 4. laid | 9. lain  | 14. raised |
| 5. sat  | 10. sets | 15. lying  |

**Ex.184**

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. F, has risen                 | 11. F,... she lays .          |
| 2. T                            | 12. F,... set                 |
| 3. F, set the table             | 13. F, ... is rising          |
| 4. F, is raised                 | 14. T                         |
| 5. F, have laid                 | 15. F, ... likes to lie down  |
| 6. T                            | 16. F, ... do not rise        |
| 7. F, needs to raise her grades | 17. T                         |
| 8. F, Key West lies off...      | 18. F, ... has risen          |
| 9. T                            | 19. F, ... husband lying      |
| 10. F, ... has raised           | 20. F, ... had carefully laid |

**Ex.185**

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. didn't know  | 7. trusted           |
| 2. is           | 8. was going         |
| 3. would help   | 9. lived             |
| 4. had lost     | 10. would celebrate  |
| 5. had been ill | 11. won't take place |
| 6. was sleeping |                      |

**Ex.186**

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. He is among ....              | 7.... was 250 000 000.             |
| 2. ... he accompanies a woman.   | 8. We did not receive ....         |
| 3. ... and hurried away.         | 9. Mary did not finish ....        |
| 4. ... with them are copies .... | 10.Although there were ....        |
| 5. ... that he needed.           | 11.We thought he was planning .... |
| 6. ... Charles did not finish.   | 12.... that she had gone ....      |

**Ex. 187**

- |           |           |           |            |          |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1. bought | 3. lasted | 5. won    | 7. wrote   | 9. has   |
| 2. took   | 4. wants  | 6. tastes | 8. started | 10. puts |

**Ex.188**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. F,... she had lost her job and was short of money.                             | 8. F, ... that he was coming home.                 |
| 2. T  | 9. F, ... that he found a blood test...            |
| 3. F, She was telling us about her fascinating trip.                              | 10. T  |
| 4. T  | 11. F, ... if he would help us.                    |
| 5. F, ... the receptionist told us that the hotel .../... said that the hotel ... | 12. F, ... that there are 10 000 species of ferns. |
| 6. F, ...visitors not to touch the exhibits.                                      | 13.F, ... what happened the previous night         |
| 7. T  | 14.T   |

**Ex. 189**

1. Tom asked (me) where I was going.
2. Mike asked (me) where I was going to spend the holiday.
3. Jennifer asked (me) what I would do when I left school.
4. The nurse wanted to know how the doctor had known her name.
5. The clerk asked (me) whether/if I had an appointment.
6. Bernard wondered whether/if his wife had seen his car keys.
7. Isabel's brother wanted to know why she hadn't called him.
8. Richard asked James to carry his briefcase.
9. Charles asked the receptionist when he could see the doctor.

**Ex. 190**

- |         |         |               |                |
|---------|---------|---------------|----------------|
| 1.told  | 5. told | 9. said       | 13. said       |
| 2. said | 6. said | 10.tells/told | 14. tell       |
| 3. said | 7. told | 11. told      | 15. said       |
| 4. told | 8. told | 12. said      | 16. tell, said |

**Ex.191**

- |                |                  |                 |                       |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. tell        | 4. to tell       | 7. told us/said | 10. won't say         |
| 2. did you say | 5. would you say | 8. told         | 11. have already told |
| 3. tell        | 6. to say        | 9. wouldn't say | 12. tell me/say       |
|                |                  |                 | 13. tell              |

**Ex.192**

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. they: cleansers                   | 6. him: Keith; his: Keith                 |
| 2. she: Nancy; her: Nancy            | 7. her: Claudia                           |
| 3. it: object                        | 8. it: parrot; him: Paul                  |
| 4. their: teenagers; them: teenagers | 9. she: Gwendolyn; his: Dionysios         |
| 5. his: Joshua; he: Joshua           | 10. her: Mrs. Wilowski; their: assistants |

**Ex.193**

- 1.F 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.F 6.T 7.F 8.T 9.F 10.T 11.T

**Ex.194**

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. F, his individual | 6. F, he must promise .... |
| 2. T                 | 7. T                       |
| 3. F, his notebook   | 8. F, his teeth            |
| 4. F, their mittens  | 9. F, his best             |
| 5. T                 | 10.T                       |

**Ex.195**

1. T
2. F, The telephone directory says ...
- 3.T
4. F, As Cathy was driving home from work, she saw her friend.
5. F, ... the picture looked strange.
6. T
7. F, ... and the stock market suffered ...
8. T
9. F, The newspaper says ...
10. F, ... and now the A Team is in the first place.

**Ex. 196**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. F, ... her opinion of me.                | 11.T   |
| 2. T  | 12.T   |
| 3. T  | 13. F, ... for its objectivity.                        |
| 4. F, ... his suitcase.                     | 14.T   |
| 5. T  | 15.T   |
| 6. T  | 16. F, ... something one wants for the sake of others. |
| 7. F, ... their situation to me personally. | 17.T   |
| 8. F, ... he will answer his telephone,     | 18.F, Nobody lost his patience ....                    |
| 9. F, ... his report with him ....          | 19. F, ... must pay his fair share ....                |
| 10.F, ... I bought for them.                | 20.T   |
| 11 .T                                       |  |
| 12.T  |  |
| 13. F, ... for its objectivity.             |  |

**Ex. 197**

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. B: its supporters    | 5. A: ... by himself        |
| 2. B: their test scores | 6. B: ... from their locker |
| 3. A: its products ...  | 7. A: ... his equipment ... |
| 4. A: told him...       | 8. A: ... his name ...      |

**Ex. 198**

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1. ... who speaks one's language,                   | 5. ... one (he) cannot expect....          | 10. ... to pay one's (his) telephone bill on time. |
| 2. ... one (he) would not be so quick to criticize. | 6. ... to type his own research paper .... | 11. ... have one's teeth checked regularly.        |
| 3. ... present one's (his) thesis ....              | 7. ... get your books ...                  |  |
| 4. ... one (he) has the responsibility ....         | 8. ... when he drives too fast.            |  |
|   | 9. ... one should go to the dentist.       |  |

**Ex.199**

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. F, ... he feels well  | 6. F, ... he must practice               |
| 2. T                     | 7. F, ... one (he) meets many challenges |
| 3. F, ... pay one's rent | 8. T                                     |
| 4. T                     | 9. T                                     |
| 5. T                     | 10.F, When one finds oneself...          |

**Ex. 200**

1. F, Playing in the street, the child was hit by the truck,
2. F, By painting and repairing as needed, one can keep one's home in good condition,
3. T
4. F, After I had addressed and stamped the letter, I dropped it in the slot.
5. T
11. F, When I was only a child, my father taught me how to play soccer,
12. F, Studying and reading, I passed the day quickly,
13. T
6. F, Walking toward the church, I noticed the beautiful stained-glass windows.
7. F, To understand the subject, one must do a great deal of studying.
8. F, Skiing down the steep hill, I felt my heart beat crazily.
9. T
10. T
14. F, Sitting alone in the room, he was frightened by the strange noise.
15. F, Having wrapped the package in pretty green paper, Phyllis put it on the table.

**Ex. 201**

1. T   2. F   3. F   4. T   5. F   6. T   7. F   8. F

**Ex. 202**

1. Claiming she never wins anything, Zoraida threw away the lottery ticket,
2. Putting in many extra hours at the supermarket, Gary no longer makes the fire company his first priority.
3. The Romans called a land north of Britain now believed to be Iceland, Ultima Thule.
4. Using the computerized sewing machines, Johanna sewed elaborate lettering and decorative patterns.
5. Running to my car, I found a ring.
6. Wearing a morning coat and striped trousers, the butler brought in tea on a silver tray.
7. Using a metal detector, May and Frederick searched for the lost class ring.
8. Running home from school, I was bitten by a dog.
9. When only a child, I was taken to the circus by my father.
10. Having hidden the key in his pocket, George left the room.
11. To understand the directions one must read them carefully.

**Ex. 203**

- |                  |             |             |               |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. colored       | 4. flashing | 7. wearing  | 10. decorated |
| 2. unaccompanied | 5. made     | 8. covering |               |
| 3. hissing       | 6. swimming | 9. sought   |               |

**Ex. 204**

- |                |              |               |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. known       | 5. working   | 9. deposited  |
| 2. written     | 6. filled    | 10. regarded  |
| 3. astonishing | 7. named     | 11. alarming  |
| 4. twisting    | 8. appearing | 12. concerned |

**Ex.205**

- |            |            |               |               |
|------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. amusing | 5. named   | 9. shocked    | 13. broken    |
| 2. fixed   | 6. burning | 10. answering | 14. ringing   |
| 3. tidied  | 7. shaking | 11. turned    | 15. cutting   |
| 4. tiring  | 8. pleased | 12. bored     | 16. beginning |

**Ex.206**

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. F, had been eaten                 | 9. F, ... to have mng ....            |
| 2. T                                 | 10. T                                 |
| 3. F, had given his speech           | 11. F, She has begun ....             |
| 4. F, Written in 1847... .           | 12. T                                 |
| 5. T                                 | 13. F, I would not have done it....   |
| 6. F, has not worn                   | 14. F, The broken chair ....          |
| 7. T                                 | 15. F, ... to have hurt his leg ... . |
| 8. F, Never having flown before .... |                                       |

**Ex.207**

- |           |            |           |        |
|-----------|------------|-----------|--------|
| 1. enough | 3. forward | 5. almost | 7. new |
| 2. again  | 4. back    | 6. he     | 8. she |

**Ex.208**

- |           |             |                  |                |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. seldom | 3. together | 5. approximately | 7. for example |
| 2. nearly | 4. only     | 6. main          | 8. apart       |

**Ex.209**

1. All the students finished the examination in time.
2. The tall, blond professor lectured about medieval architecture.
3. Paul excitedly read Jane's letter.
4. The committee discussed the problem for a long time without reaching a decision.
5. Crime is on the rise.
6. The girl wearing the colorful bathing suit is my cousin.
7. The glass figurine on display in the store window appealed to me.
8. Boston, the capital of Massachusetts, has many universities and colleges.
9. He walked down the stairs quickly.
10. The young girl waiting by the door would like to see you.

**Ex.210**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The man shook his head/The man said no.                              | 8.  |
| 2.  | 9. The ballerina danced for hours.                                      |
| 3.  | 10. Professor Blanton, the college president, will speak on this topic. |
| 4. Jane went to the store to buy a new dress.                           | 11.   |
|   | 12.   |
| 5. Running through the street, the thief was apprehended by the police. | 13. It took us three hours to drive to new York.                        |

6. 14.  
 7. Bob saw several expensive pieces of art. 15. I read the book in four hours.

**Ex. 211**

- |                |              |                 |                     |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. resistance  | 5. grinding  | 9. poems        | 13. nor do they eat |
| 2. industrial  | 6. religion  | 10. inexpensive | 14. shopping        |
| 3. warm        | 7. craftsmen | 11. style       | 15. but expensive   |
| 4. and stories | 8. a critic  | 12. jogs        | 16. agreement       |

**Ex.212**

- |                 |                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 1. money        | 7. a game                 |
| 2. warmth       | 8. mineral                |
| 3. ... to plant | 9. economic opportunities |
| 4. ... shouted  | 10. and lifting weights   |
| 5. ... working  | 11. and grading it        |
| 6. adjust       | 12. soaking ... giving    |

**Ex.213**

- |                       |                |                                       |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. returned           | 6. wise        | 11. let it                            |
| 2. to speak           | 7. to get      | 12. nor how to spot                   |
| 3. no visitors        | 8. reading     | 13. orsedimentary.                    |
| 4. to do her homework | 9. carrying    | 14. ... but also serve as centers ... |
| 5. trust              | 10. exercising | 15. ... has sixty-four squares        |

**Ex.214**

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ... and talented               | 11. ... dust                          |
| 2. ... and to underline ...       | 12. ... and an extra job              |
| 3. ... and to do the book keeping | 13. ... and folk dances               |
| 4. ... and headaches              | 14. ... and charming                  |
| 5. ... and writing                | 15. ... and the excellent theater ... |
| 6. She is famous not only ...     | 16. ... but cold                      |
| 7. ... and reading                | 17. ... as buying a house             |
| 8. ... but also creative          | 18. ... than working                  |
| 9. ... but also safer ...         | 19. ... and to paint                  |
| 10. ... and mathematics           | 20. ... and jumped                    |

**Ex.215**

- |                      |                      |                         |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. F, to swim        | 6. F, written a will | 11 .F, or to study      |
| 2. T                 | 7. T                 | 12.F, slow to praise    |
| 3. T                 | 8. T                 | 13.T                    |
| 4. F, and fjords ... | 9. F, confidence     | 14.F, and put them ...  |
| 5. T                 | 10.T                 | 15.F, than playing golf |

**Ex. 216**

- |                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. T                               | 6. T                            |
| 2. F, write me.                    | 7. F, cost Bob over 10 dollars. |
| 3. F, deliver the package to them. | 8. F, taught me everything.     |
| 4. T                               | 9. T                            |
| 5. F, is making Mary a new shirt.  | 10. T                           |

**Ex. 217**

1. Rarely do we go ...
2. Seldom do I ...
3. Hardly ever do I ...
4. Fever will I ...
5. Never have I known ...
6. Scarcely ever does the mail arrive ...
7. Hardly ever does he come to work on time.
8. At no time have women had greater opportunities.
9. Only after he received first prize was he pleased with himself.
10. Never had the traffic been so bad.
11. Not only did she come, but she stayed for two hours.
12. Only before the opening of the show can you buy tickets.
13. Not a single word did he say during dinner.
14. Only on rare occasion do they go to the theater.

**Ex. 218**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Little did he think he would be famous one day.      | 5. Up went the balloon, and the people cheered.           |
| 2. Such was his ambition that he would stop at nothing. | 6. Few were the friends that he could rely on.            |
| 3. Down poured the rain for three days.                 | 7. So strong were the winds that the trees were uprooted. |
| 4. Little does he know what is in store for him.        | 8. Out flew the bird from its tiny cage.                  |

**Ex. 219**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. In the drawer lay the gun.                    | 5. Beside the roadside stood a horse.                    |
| 2. There were many reasons for the choice.       | 6. There are several details which cannot be overlooked. |
| 3. Under the tree was a basket full of food.     | 7. Next to the bed was the telephone.                    |
| 4. It is possible that she will arrive tomorrow. | 8. There is a possibility that we can go.                |

**Ex. 220**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. When did you write to the university? | 5. Where do you register?                 |
| 2. Is that the new catalog?              | 6. How far is it to the nearest bus stop? |
| 3. What do you mean?                     | 7. Have I passed the test?                |
| 4. Is she coming?                        | 8. What time does the bookstore close?    |

**Ex.221**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Under the bed lay the dog.   | 5. There are many references at the back of the book.              |
| 2. Not until recently have people been so interested in health foods. | 6. So few were his errors that he could pass for a native speaker. |
| 3. Scarcely had the man left when the bomb exploded.                  | 7. I wonder when I will get my test score results.                 |
| 4. Up jumped the dog when it saw its master.                          | 8. They haven't told me if I have to write an essay.               |

**Ex.222**

1. Never again will I allow myself....
2. Not for one moment did she think that she would win the competition.
3. Rarely does one find a person of such integrity as Henry.
4. Not until all nuclear weapons are eliminated will world peace be secure.
5. At no time are sentries allowed to leave their posts.
6. Only after several years training are policemen allowed to use guns.
7. In no way could I persuade her to see the foolishness of her plan.
8. No sooner had I settled down to read the paper than the doorbell rang.
9. Little did she realize how the evening was to end.
10. Should you ever need any help, just give me a ring.
11. Had she found out that he had been married before, she would never have married him.
12. Were life on other planets ever to be found, there would probably be no means of communication.

**Ex.223**

- |             |        |              |
|-------------|--------|--------------|
| 1. without  | 6. for | 11. on/after |
| 2. about    | 7. to  | 12.of        |
| 3. but also | 8. nor | 13. in       |
| 4. to       | 9. or  |              |
| 5. to       | 10.on  |              |

**Ex.224**

- |       |         |        |         |        |        |
|-------|---------|--------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. in | 3. for  | 5. for | 7. from | 9. to  | 11. of |
| 2. to | 4. from | 6. on  | 8. in   | 10. in |        |

**Ex.225**

- |            |        |            |          |          |
|------------|--------|------------|----------|----------|
| 1. in/with | 5. of  | 9. to      | 13. for  | 17. to   |
| 2. to      | 6. of  | 10. of     | 14. with | 18. for  |
| 3. on      | 7. of  | 11. to/for | 15. to   | 19. from |
| 4. to      | 8. for | 12. of     | 16. on   |          |

**Ex. 226**

- |               |            |                 |              |               |
|---------------|------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. to ... for | 4. to      | 7. on           | 10. about/of | 13. of        |
| 2. from       | 5. (up) on | 8. to for...for | 11. of       | 14. with      |
| 3. with       | 6. of      | 9. of (about)   | 12. to       | 15. to (with) |

**Ex. 227**

- |         |          |         |        |               |          |         |            |
|---------|----------|---------|--------|---------------|----------|---------|------------|
| 1. with | 2. of    | 3. to   | 4. of  | 5. at         | 6. from  | 7. with | 8. in (at) |
| 9. at   | 10. from | 11. for | 12. of | 13. at (with) | 14. with | 15. to  |            |

**Ex.228**

- |            |          |            |             |             |             |
|------------|----------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. between | 4. among | 7. between | 10. between | 13. between | 16. among   |
| 2. among   | 5. among | 8. among   | 11. between | 14. between | 17. between |
| 3. between | 6. among | 9. between | 12. between | 15. among   |             |

**Ex.229**

1. substituted for
2. To clear deep snow off a sidewalk ....
3. rely on
4. Between dark and light turkey meat, ....
5. ... is different from ....
6. ... different from nor cheaper ....
7. compatible with
8. in warm, dry climates
9. capable of
10. the largest of... .

**Ex. 230**

- |                      |                        |                              |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. T                 | 6. F, with a key       | 12. F, the leg of the chair  |
| 2. F, by car         | 7. T                   | 13. F, two pounds of butter  |
| 3. T                 | 8. F, by the yard      |                              |
| 4. T                 | 9. T                   | 14. T                        |
| 5. F, walks like his | 10. F, for a newspaper | 15. F, at the movies at 7:00 |
|                      | 11. T                  |                              |

**Ex.231**

- |                  |                       |                      |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. F, agree with | 6. F, surprised at/by | 11. T                |
| 2. F, arrived in | 7. T                  | 12. F, tired of      |
| 3. T             | 8. F, famous for      | 13. F, comment on    |
| 4. F, depends on | 9. T                  | 14. F, familiar with |
| 5. T             | 10. F, compare... for | 15. F, in search of  |

**Ex.232**

- 1.C 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. C 11. D  
12. B 13. B 14. D 15. C

**Ex.233**

- 1.but 2. for 3. and 4. but 5. but 6. and 7. yet 8. so 9. nor

**Ex.234**

- 1.C 2.A 3. B 4.D 5.C 6. A 7. B 8.C 9. B 10. C 11.A 12. C 13. B

**Ex. 235**

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A 11.B 12. A 13. B  
14. B 15. B 16.B 17. B 18. A 19. A 20. B 21.A 22. B 23. A 24. A 25. B

**Ex. 236**

- |                      |                |                         |
|----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. F, it's difficult | 6. F, healthy  | 11. F, lethim           |
| 2. T                 | 7. F, illusion | 12.T                    |
| 3. F, principal      | 8. T           | 13.F, almost fell off   |
| 4. T                 | 9. F, lose     | 14.T                    |
| 5. T                 | 10.T           | 15. F, try ing to imply |

**Ex.237**

- |                    |                            |                           |
|--------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. F, already      | 6. T                       | 11.T                      |
| 2. F, cloth        | 7. F, differed loudly with | 12.F, emigrate from       |
| 3. T               | 8. T                       | 13.F, advice              |
| 4. T               | 9. F, beside the sofa      | 14.F, differs from        |
| 5. F, all together | 10.F, farther              | 15.F, further instruction |

**Ex.238**

- |                    |                    |                 |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. F, weather      | 5. F, stationery   | 9. F, to people |
| 2. T               | 6. T               | 10.T            |
| 3. T               | 7. F, their books  |                 |
| 4. F, who's coming | 8. F, respectfully |                 |

**Ex. 239**

- |                   |                       |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. F, to beautify | 6. T                  | 11.T             |
| 2. F, happy       | 7. F, accuracy        | 12. F, chronic   |
| 3. T              | 8. F, childishly      | 13. F, childhood |
| 4. F, the reality | 9. T                  | 14.T             |
| 5. T              | 10. F, the population | 15.F, population |

**VOCABULARY****Ex.240**

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. A 11.C 12. B 13. D 14. D  
15. B 16.C 17. A 18. A 19. B 20. A 21.B 22. B 23. C 24. D 25. B

**Ex.241**

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C 11.A 12. C 13. B 14. A  
15. A 16.B 17. C 18. A 19. D 20. C 21.D 22. B 23. A 24. C 25. D

**Ex. 242**

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B 11. D 12. A 13. C 14. A  
15. D 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. C 20. D 21.B 22. B 23. C 24. B 25. C

**Ex. 243**

- 1.B 2. B 3.D 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. B 9. D 10. C 11.D 12. C 13. B 14. B  
15. B 16.C 17. C 18. A 19. C 20. A 21.D 22. B 23. A 24. B 25. D

**Ex.244**

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D 11.A 12. D 13. B 14. A  
15. B 16.B 17. D 18. A 19. B 20. A 21.D 22. C 23. D 24. D 25. A

**STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSIONS****T.1**

1. A 2. C 3. D 4.D 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B 11. C 12. A 13. D  
14. B 15. B 16. F 17.A 18. C 19. C 20. B 21. C 22. B 23. C 24. B 25. D 26. C  
27. C 28. C 29 A 30. B

**T. 2**

- 1.C 2. C 3.A 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. D 11. B 12. C  
13. C 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. B 21. D 22. B  
23. C 24. B 25. B 26. B 27. B 28. B 29. A 30. B

## IDIOMS

### Ex. 1

1. B    2. A    3. B    4. C    5. A    6. B    7. A

### Ex. 2

1. 3;    2. 10;    3. 6;    4. 2;    5. 8;    6. 9;    7. 1;    8. 7;    9. 5;    10. 4

### Ex. 3

1. 4;    2. 10;    3. 7;    4. 6;    5. 8;    6. 1;    7. 9;    8. 3;    9. 5;    10. 2

### Ex. 4

1. 4;    2. 7;    3. 5;    4. 10, 8;    5. 2;    6. 9;    7. 1;    8. 6;    9. 3

### Ex. 5

1. 5;    2. 1;    3. 6;    4. 2;    5. 7;    6. 9;    7. 3;    8. 8;    9. 10;    10. 4

### Ex. 6

1. 4;    2. 6;    3. 10;    4. 8;    5. 1;    6. 9;    7. 5;    8. 2;    9. 7;    10. 3

### Ex. 7

1. 7;    2. 4;    3. 8;    4. 1;    5. 10;    6. 3;    7. 2;    8. 5;    9. 6;    10. 9

### Ex. 8

1. A    2. B    3. A    4. B    5. A    6. A    7. B    8. A    9. B    10. A  
11. A    12. C    13. B    14. A    15. B    16. C    17. A    18. A    19. B    20. C

### Ex. 9

1. B    2. C    3. B    4. C    5. C    6. A    7. B    8. C    9. A    10. B  
11. C    12. A    13. B    14. A    15. B    16. A    17. A    18. A    19. A

### Ex. 10

1. B    2. A    3. A    4. B    5. A    6. B    7. A    8. A    9. B    10. B  
11. B    12. A    13. B    14. B    15. A    16. A    17. B    18. B    19. B    20. A

### Ex. 11

1. B    2. A    3. A    4. A    5. C    6. C    7. B    8. A    9. B  
10. C    11. B    12. A    13. B    14. C    15. C    16. A    17. B    18. C

### Ex. 12

1. B    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. A    6. B    7. C    8. A    9. C  
10. A    11. B    12. B    13. A    14. B    15. C    16. A    17. C    18. A    19. B

### Ex. 13

1. L    2. D    3. I    4. F    5. G    6. C    7. E    8. J    9. A    10. H    11. B    12. K

### Ex. 14

1. B    2. B    3. C    4. C    5. B    6. C    7. A    8. B/C    9. B    10. A    11. C    12. A

### Ex. 15

1. A    2. A    3. B    4. C    5. B    6. C    7. B  
8. B    9. C    10. A

## REFERENCES

1. All Clear! Idioms in Context. By Helen K. Fragiadakis. - USA: Heinie, Heinie Publishers, Inc., 1993.
2. Barron's TOEFL. By Pamela J. Sharpe. - USA: New York, Barron's Educational Series, Inc., 1984.
3. Cracking the TOEFL. By Liz Buffa and Laurice Pearson. - USA, 1996.
4. English. Приложение к газете "Первое сентября". - Москва, 1996 №31, 35, 36, 39.
5. English learner's digest. - Ukraine: Kiev, 1996, January №2.
6. English Grammar. By Barbara J. Daniels, David I. Daniels. - USA: Harper Collins Publishers, 1991.
7. Ground work for a better Vocabulary. By R. Kent Smith and Carole Mohr. - USA: Townsend Press, Inc., 1991.
8. Key to Success on the TOEFL. Practice Tests. By Ronald E. Feare. - Oxford University Press, 1991.
9. The complete Guide to TOEFL. By Rogers Bruce. - USA: Boston, Massachusetts, 1993.
10. The New Cambridge English Course. By Michael Swan and Catherine Walter. - Great Britain: Cambridge University Press, 1992.
11. NTC's Preparation for the TOEFL. By Milada Broukal and Enid Nolan-Woods. - USA: National Textbook Company Linkolnwood (Chicago), Illinois, 1992 (1991).
12. Pass Key to the TOEFL. By Pamela J. Sharpe and Philip D. - USA: Barron's Educational Series, Inc., 1996.
13. TOEFL Grammar Workbook. By Phyllis L. Lim and Mary Kurtin. - USA: Macmillan, 1992.